

LANGUAGE AWARENESS

French, German, Russian
in simple English

FRANCE



RUSSIA



GERMANY



RED ROSE

LANGUAGE AWARENESS
FRENCH, GERMAN, RUSSIAN

In Simple English

RED ROSE

PREFACE

This book aimed for students, professors and people who need to know basics of three most important scientific language after English i.e. French, German and Russian. However, it is a collection of materials from several books and websites, its arrangement sketched in an efficient way to give the elements of these languages. Mathematic beside philosophy are queen and king of other sciences. Thus the basic mathematical terms also added. The best way for mastering every language is to read their simplified then unsimplified texts and literature. To start we added some short ones. The reader based on the material of this book can easily extend his/her knowledge of these three important languages. My suggestion for the reader of this book is to master the sounds at first then continue.

Contents

French: sounds and Alphabet (8), Basic words and phrases (18), numbers and math (35), basic grammar (59), basic conversations short stories (115).

German: sounds and Alphabet (133), Basic words and phrases (148), numbers and math (167), basic grammar (196), basic conversations and short story (286).

Russian: sounds and Alphabet (306), Basic words and phrases (319), basic grammar (336), numbers and math (379), basic conversations and short (416).

References (440)

FRENCH

The French language is one of the most widespread languages in terms of its presence around the world. It is the only language that can be found to be used commonly in every single continent. You may or may not be aware of the fact that French is derived from Latin, along with many other languages that it is similar to such as Spanish and Italian. If you already have some knowledge of Spanish or Italian, then learning French could be quite easy for you. By switching up the order of the words in your sentence, you will convey a completely different meaning. This language is a *feminine/ masculine*.

C'EST PARTI LET'S GO!

French Alphabet and Sounds

L'ALPHABET FRANÇAIS



<i>Letter</i>	<i>Name</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>
A	A	ah
B	Bé	beh
C	Cé	sch
D	Dé	deh
E	eu	uh
F	èF	eff
G	jé	zheh
H	Hache	ahsh
I	I	ee
J	Ji	zhee
K	Ka	kah
L	èl	ell
M	èm	em
N	èn	en
O	O	oh
P	Pé	peh
Q	ku	koo
R	erre	air
S	esse	ess
T	Té	teh
U	U	ooh
V	Vé	veh
W	Double Vé	doo-blah-veh
X	ix	eeks
Y	Igrec	cegrek
Z	Zed	zed

Nombres Cardinaux

Cardinal numbers

FRENCH NUMBERS

1 **un**
(unh) **6** **six**
(sees)

2 **deux**
(de) **7** **sept**
(set)

3 **trois**
(trwa) **8** **huit**
(weet)

4 **quatre**
(katr) **9** **neuf**
(nurf)

5 **cinq**
(senk) **10** **dix**
(dees)

L-I-V-R-E [el] [ee] [vay] [err] [euh]

C-H-A-I-S-E [say] [ash] [ah] [ee] [ess] [euh]

S-O-F-A [ess] [oh] [ef] [ah]

A-M-I [ah] [em] [ee]

The pronunciation of the letters will change when they are placed together with other letters. The following examples are ones that you will see very commonly in French words. (*The **h** shows nasal sound & s is **not pronounced** but se/so sound z & É/é sound ə/e in the end of the word*)

À Á Â /à á â [**ah/æ**]: Tarte, baguette, calm.

AI/ai [**eh/e**]: mais, Voudrais, fraise, j'**a**ime.

Au, eau, aux [**uh/u:**]: Eau, auto, gâteau, aussi, beau.

É/é/ er/ ez/ et [**eh/ə/e**]: Parler, parlez, carnet, désolé.

Èè/ Êê/ ett, ell, enn [**əh/əe**]: Très, belle, appelle.

Eu, œu [**u:h**]: Peu, œufs, bleu, deux.

Œu [əh/æ]: *cœur*:

Subir une greffe du **cœur**.

*To have a **heart** transplant.*

Graver un **cœur** sur un arbre.

*To carve a **heart** into a tree trunk.*

Eur, cœur [əhrr/əerr]: burre, acteur, **sœur**, heure.

*J'ai deux **sœurs**.*

I have two **sisters**.

Travailler pendant cinq **heures**.

*To work for five **hours**.*

Î/î [eel]: il, kilo, petit.

Ô /O [o/ɔ:]: hôtel, rose.

Oll, onn, omm, ott[oh]: **bonne**, **pomme**.

Où/ou [oo]: **pour**, **voudrais**, **tout**.

Or [orr]: accord, sorte.

û/u [ooh]: **tu**, **sucré**, **russe**.

Ill [eeh/eeə]: **filles**, **famille**.

Ail [æy/æj]: **travail**.

Oi [wah/u: æ]: **moi**, **revoir**, **voilà**.

Ui [wee/ee/i:]: **huit**, **fruit**.

Am/an/en/em [awh/ɔ:ə]: **grand**, **chamber**, **prendre**.

Prendre un verre dans le placard.

to take a glass from the cupboard.

In, ie, im, un, ym, aim, ain [æh]: **timbre**, **cinq**,

sympathique, pain, thym.

On, om [aw/ ɔ:h]: bonbon, combien, blond.

Ca, co, cu, cou / c + consonant [k]: ca, co, cu, cou,
code, class, camembert.

C+i, c+e [s]: merci, ceci, citron.

Ç/ç [ss]: ça, çon, çu, garçon, reçu.

Ch [sh/f]: chic, chat.

Ga, go, gu /g + consonant [g]: gare, guitar, goûter.

Ge, gi [ʒ]: manger, gentil, gête.

J [ʒ]: bonjour, joli, je.

H [mute]: hôtel, home.

Qu/q [k]: que, qui, qu'est-ce que.

S [s at the beginning and ss:] salut, aussi, six.

Vowel + s + vowel [z]: fraise, mademoiselle.

Nous Avons [new-z-ah-voh].

Vous Avez [vew- z-ah-veh]

Vous Etes [vew- z-et]

Ils Ont [eel-z-oh] VS Ils Sont [eel] [s-oh]

Elles Ont [el-z-oh] VS Elles Sont [el] [s-oh]

The first example, *ils* or *elles ont* means “they have” while the second example, *ils* or *elles sont* means “they are”. Without making this difference in sound that is caused by the s and the *o*, you could confuse the person you are speaking to.

French Accents

The letter **e** is the most common letter in the entire French language which can be pronounced in different ways. The accent on top of it, tell you how to pronounce it. There are accents under or over top of the letters **c**, **a**, **i**, **u**, and **o**. These accents will change the sound of the letter in specific ways.

The Cédille Ç: The **cédille** is an accent that you see below the letter **c**. This changes the sound of the letter to make it sound more like an *s* before a vowel such as **sa**, **so**, **su**. *Garçon* [g-ah-r-son].

The Accent Aigu (é) on top of the letter **e** changes the sound of the letter **e** more nasally such as **Écrire** [ay-k-ree-r] = *to write*.

The Accent Circonflexe (Â, Ê, Ô) can be found on all vowels except **y**. It makes it so that the letter is pronounced quicker and with more force. **Poîntu** [p-wa-n-too] *pointy*, **Août** [oo-t] *August*.

The Accent Grave (À, È, Ò) changes the meaning of two words which are spelled the exact same way such as:

Ou [oo] = *or* **vs** Oû [oo] = *where*,
La [lah] = *the* **vs** Là [lah] = *there*,
A [ah] = *have* **vs** À [ah] = *at* or *to*

The Accent Tréma (Ë, İ, Ü) show that the letter it is on top of and the letter after it in a word must pronounce separately such as **Noël** [noh-el] *Christmas*, **Chloë** [chlo-e], **Jamaïque** [jah-mah-ee-k] *Jamaica*.

Some examples

e': e'le'phant; elephant

è à ù : fièvre; fever, là; there, où; where

â ê ô û î : gâteau; cake, être; to be, île; island, chômage; unemployment, dû; past participle of devoir; to have

ë ï ÿ ü : Noël; Christmas, maïs; corn, aigüe; acute.

Ç : Français; french

French Pronunciation	
ay	Pronounced as [ɛj] only before a consonant Pronounced as [aj] elsewhere
c	Pronounced as [s] before an 'i', 'e' or 'y' Pronounced as [k] elsewhere
g	Pronounced as [ʒ] before an 'i', 'e' or 'y' Pronounced as [g] elsewhere
i	Pronounced as [i.] only before vowels Pronounced as [i] elsewhere
ie	Pronounced as [i] at the end of a word Pronounced as [jɛ] before an 'n' Pronounced as [je] elsewhere
ill	Pronounced as [j] after vowels
m & n	Both are silent at the end of a word and the vowel(s) before them are nasalized.
r, s, t, x & z	All of them are silent unless the next word begins with a vowel
u	Pronounced as [u] before vowels Pronounced as [y] elsewhere
x	Pronounced as [s~z~Ø] when placed at the end of a word
k & w	These alphabets only appear in loan words
y	Mostly found in loanwords and names of places
œ	Used in some French words (and in words of Greek origin) to represent a single sound [œ] or [ø]
æ	Used in a few words of Greek or Latin origin to represent a single sound [æ]
Letters with accents are not considered part of the French alphabet	

BASIC WORDS & PHRASES



LA LUNE



LE SOLEIL



LA TERRE



LA MER

What color is it?

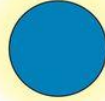
De quelle couleur est-ce?



rouge



jaune



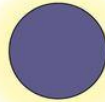
bleu



vert



orange



violet



rose



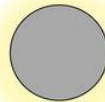
blanc



noir



marron



gris



la
maison



la
chaise



la
table



le
canape'



la
lampe



la salle
de bain



la chambre
a' couche'



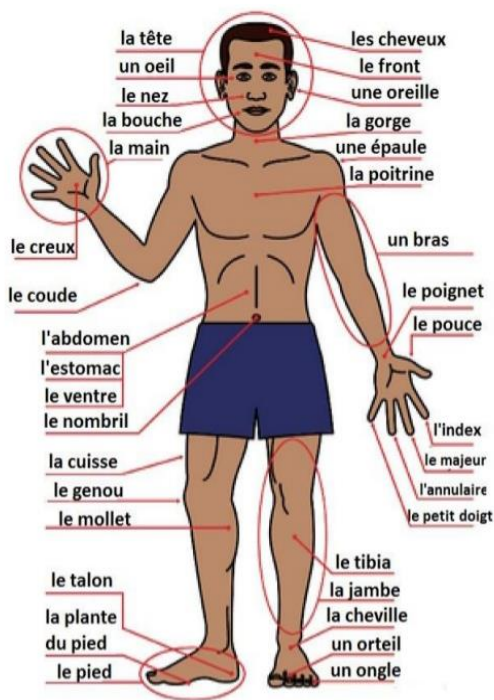
la
cuisine



la salle 'a
mange'



Les parties du corps



<p>Salut! Hello!</p>	<p>Bonjour! Good morning!</p>
<p>Au revoir! Goodbye!</p>	<p>Excusez-moi. Excuse me.</p>
<p>Comment vas-tu? How are you?</p>	<p>Merci. Thank you.</p>
<p>Je t'aime. I love you.</p>	<p>S'il vous plaît. Please.</p>
<p>Pardon. I'm sorry.</p>	<p>Enchanté. Nice to meet you.</p>
<p>Je vais bien, merci! Fine, thank you.</p>	<p>Merci beaucoup! Thank you very much.</p>

Les Accessoires



un chapeau



les lunettes
de soleil



un parapluie



une écharpe



une casquette



les bottes



les gants



une basket



un bonnet



une chaussure



Les aliments

jeanmarteau.blogspot.com



le poisson



le steak



le poulet



le riz



la purée



la soupe



les frites



les légumes



la salade



les fruits



le fromage



le yaourt

La chambre



Un lit



Une commode



Une table de chevet



Une lampe



Un miroir



Une armoire dressing



Une fenêtre avec rideaux



Une penderie



Une porte



Des escaliers



Un bureau



Des lits superposés



Une chaise de bureau



Un portant

Absolutely French

La cuisine



Une gazinière
avec une hotte



Une fenêtre



Une porte



Un évier



Une gazinière avec
un four



Un placard



Des rideaux



Une table



Un réfrigérateur



Un étendoir à
torchons



Une lampe suspendue



Une commode



Une étagère

Absolutely French

La salle de bain



Une douche / une baignoire



Un radiateur



Une cabine de douche



Une armoire



Une fenêtre avec rideaux



Un tapis de douche



Une porte



Un étendoir à serviettes



Un lavabo



Une lampe suspendue



Des toilettes



Un miroir à pied



Un miroir mural



Une étagère

Absolutchly French

Le salon



Un canapé



Une cheminée



Un fauteuil



Une étagère



Un meuble télé



Une lampe



Une fenêtre avec rideaux



Un tabouret



Une porte



Un porte manteaux



Une table à manger



Une horloge



Une chaise



Un lustre

Absolutely French

Key Question Words



Seasons

Les saisons et le temps

En quelle saison sommes-nous?

Nous sommes _____.

au printemps



en été

en automne



en hiver

Quel temps fait-il?

Il fait _____.



chaud



froid



du soleil



du vent



Il pleut.



Il neige.

Animals

le chat



cat

le chien



dog

la grenouille



frog

le poisson rouge



goldfish

le perroquet



parrot

le lapin



rabbit

la tortue



tortoise

La chauve-souris



bat

le taureau



bull

la vache



cow



daily routines/ Le activités quotidiennes

Wake up	Se réveiller
Eat Breakfast	Prendre le petit déjeuner
Go to Work	Aller au travail
Rest	Se reposer
Meets friends	Rencontrer ses amis
Walk the dog	Sortir le chien
Chat	Bavarder
Dress	S'habiller
Fall Asleep	S'endormir
Have fun	S'amuser

basic french for travel

GREETINGS

Hello: Bonjour
Goodbye: Au revoir
Thank you: Merci
With pleasure: Avec plaisir
Good evening: Bonsoir
Good night: Bonne nuit
Ma'am: Madame
Sir: Monsieur

FOOD + DRINK

Bread: Le pain
Cheese: Le fromage
Cake: Le gâteau
Wine: Le vin
Tap water: L'eau du robinet
Orange juice: Le jus d'orange
Hot chocolate: Un chocolat chaud
Ice cubes: Les glaçons
Hot: Chaud
Iced: Glacé
Ice cream: La glace
Baguette: La baguette
Fries: Les frites

TRANSPORTATION

Metro: Le métro
Bus: Le bus
Car: La voiture
Road: La rue
Taxi: Le taxi
By foot: Au pied
Ticket: Un billet
Plane: L'avion

PLACES

Museum: Le musée
Restaurant: Le restaurant
Bakery: La boulangerie
Deli shop: La charcuterie
Hotel: L'hôtel
Sea: La mer
Mountains: Les montagnes
Shop: Le magasin
Market: Le marché
Park: Le parc
Pool: La piscine
Bathroom: Les toilettes
Airport: L'aéroport



Numbers and math

**Nous allons maintenant regarder les chiffres
pour plus de pratique.**

We will now look at the numbers for more practice:

0	zéro	zay-roh
1	un	ahn
2	deux	duh
3	trois	twah
4	quatre	cat
5	cinq	sank
6	six	sees
7	sept	set
8	huit	hweat
9	neuf	nuhf
10	dix	dees
11	onze	ohnz
12	douze	dooz
13	treize	trehz
14	quatorze	kah-tohrz
15	quinze	canz
16	seize	sayz
17	dix-sept	dees-set
18	dix-huit	dees-wheat
19	dix-neuf	dees-nuhf
20	vingt	vahn

Between **twenty** and **sixty-nine**, follows the same pattern. 21, *vingt et un*. For any number that is between twenty and sixty-one that has a one at the end, you will say the multiple of ten that it starts with (*vingt, trente, quarante, cinquante or soixante*) and then you will say *et un* [ay-ahn] which in English means *and one*.

21	vingt-et-un	vahn-tay-ahn
22	vingt-deux	vahn-duh
23	vingt-trois	vahn-twah
24	vingt-quatre	vahn-cat
25	vingt-cinq	vahn-sank
26	vingt-six	vahn-sees
27	vingt-sept	vahn-set
28	vingt-huit	vahn-hwheat
29	vingt-neuf	vahn-nuhf
30	trente	trahnt
31	trente-et-un	trahn-tay-ahn
32	trente-deux	trahn-duh
40	quarante	kah-rahnt
50	cinquante	sahn-kahnt
60	soixante	swah-sahnt

As long as you know the words and pronunciation for the multiples of ten between twenty and sixty,

you can simply add ***et un***. The examples of this are below; 21, 31, 41, 51, 61.

21 ***Vingt et un***, [v-ain-t][eyy][uhhn]
31 ***trente et un***, [t-ron-t] [eyy][uhhn],
41 ***quarante et un***, [ka-ron-t] [eyy][uhhn]
51 ***cinquante et un***, [s-ain-k-ont][eyy][uhhn]
61 ***soixante et un*** [s-wah-s-ont][eyy][uhhn].

And also:

22, vingt-deux,
23 vingt-trois,
24 vingt-quatre,
25 vingt-cinq,
26 vingt-six,
27 vingt-sept,
28 vingt-huit,
29 vingt-neuf.

Numbers from **seventy** to **ninety-nine** follow an irregular pattern,

70, *Soixante-Dix*, [s-wah-s-ont] [dee-s]

80 *Quatre-Vingts*, [cat-ruh][v-ain-t]

90 *Quatre-Vingt-Dix*, [cat-ruh] [v-ain-t] [dee-s]

Note: Seventy = ***Soixante-Dix*** , is comprised of two different words: ***Soixante*** and ***Dix***. We know now that ***Soixante*** means sixty and that ***Dix*** means ten. When we put these together we can see that it means **Sixty plus Ten** which equals to **seventy**. This rule also applies to the other two numbers, so now:

70, *Soixante-Dix*, [s-wah-s-ont] [dee-s]

71, *Soixante-et-onze* [s-wah-s-ont][ayy][oh-n-z]

72, *Soixante-douze* [s-wah-s-ont][doo-z]

73, *Soixante-treize* [s-wah-s-ont][t-r-ez]

74, *Soixante-quatorze* [s-wah-s-ont][cat-or-z]

75, *Soixante-quinze* [s-wah-s-ont][k-an-z]

76, *Soixante-seize* [s-wah-s-ont] [s-ez]

77, *Soixante-dix-sept* [s-wah-s-ont] [dee-set]

78, *Soixante dix-huit* [s-wah-s-ont] [dee-sweet]

79, *Soixante-dix-neuf* [s-wah-s-ont] [dee-s-nuf]

80, *Quatre-Vingts*, [cat-ruh] [v-ain-t]

Note: **Quatre** means four and **Vingt** means twenty so by $4 \times 20 = 80$ so then **Quatre-Vingt** means eighty.

- 81** *Quatre-Vingt un* [cat-ruh] [v-ain-t] [uhhn]
- 82** *Quatre-Vingt Deux*, [cat-ruh] [v-ain-t] [duuh]
- 83** *Quatre-Vingt Trois*, [cat-ruh] [v-ain-t] [t-r-wah]
- 84** *Quatre-Vingt Quatre* [cat-ruh] [v-ain-t] [cat-ruh]
- 85** *Quatre-Vingt Cinq* [cat-ruh] [v-ain-t] [sank],
- 86** *Quatre-Vingt Six* [cat-ruh][v-ain-t] [see-s]
- 87** *Quatre-Vingt Sept* [cat-ruh] [v-ain-t] [set]
- 88** *Quatre-Vingt Huit* [cat-ruh] [v-ain-t] [wee-t]
- 89** *Quatre-Vingt Neuf* [cat-ruh] [v-ain-t] [nuuf]
- 90**, *Quatre-Vingt-Dix*, [cat-ruh] [v-ain-t] [dee-s]

Note: *Quatre-Vingt-Dix* means $4 \times 20 + 10 = 90$
Quatre-Vingt Onze means $4 \times 20 + 11 = 91$

- 91**, *Quatre-Vingt Onze* [cat-ruh] [v-ain-t] [oh-n-z]
- 92** *Quatre-Vingt Douze* [cat-ruh] [v-ain-t] [doo-z]
- 93** *Quatre-Vingt Treize* [cat-ruh] [v-ain-t] [t-r-ez]

94 *Quatre-Vingt Quatorze*
[cat-ruh] [v-ain-t] [cat-or-z]

95 Quatre-Vingt Quinze

[cat-ruh] [v-ain-t] [k-an-z]

96 Quatre-Vingt Seize

[cat-ruh] [v-ain-t] [s-ez]

97 Quatre-Vingt Dix-Sept

[cat-ruh] [v-ain-t] [dee-set]

98 Quatre-Vingt Dix-Huit

[cat-ruh] [v-ain-t] [dee-sweet]

99 Quatre-Vingt Dix-Neuf

[cat-ruh] [v-ain-t] [dee-s-nuf] = $4 \times 20 + 19 = 99$

100, Cent [s-on-t]

Cent un = 101

Cent Quatre-Vingt = 180 = 100 + 80 = 180

Cent Vingt Cinq = 125

Cent Quatre-Vingt Un = 181

Cent Trente Six = 136

Cent Quatre-Vingt Dix-Neuf = 199

Cent Soixante et Un = 161

Cent Quatre-Vingt Treize = 193

Cent Soixante-Dix = 170

Cent Soixante Quatorze = 174

Cent *Quatre-Vingt Dix-Neuf* = 199

$100 + 4 \times 20 + 19 = 199$

200= Deux Cent

300= Trois Cent

400= Quatre Cent

500= Cinq Cent

600= **Six Cent**

700= **Sept Cent**

800= **Huit Cent**

900= **Neuf Cent**

1000= Un Mille [uhn][m-eel]

1001= Mille et Un

1350= Mille Trois Cent Cinquante

1270 =Mille Deux Cent Soixante-Dix

1593= Mille Cinq Cent Quatre-Vingt Treize

1120 =Mille Cent Vingt

1000, 2000, 3000, 4000, 5000, 6000, 7000, 8000,
9000, **10,000**

Mille, Deux Mille, Trois Mille, Quatre Mille, Cinq Mille, Six Mille, Sept Mille, Huit Mille, Neuf Mille, **Dix Mille.**

After ten thousand, you keep going up in the regular sequence of numbers that we have already learned until you reach:

999 999 = *Neuf Cent Quatre Vingt Dix-Neuf Mille.*

One Million, *Un Million* [uhn][mee-lee-yon]

One Billion, *Un Milliard*, [uhn][meel-yard]

One Trillion, *Un Billion*, [uhn][beel-yon]

Nombres Ordinaux ordinal numbers

To rank in French: **le premier/la première** (the first), **deuxième** (second), **troisième** (third), etc all the way up to **centième** (hundredth")!

Note: the **Le premier** if masculine, **La premier** if féminin. **1er/1^{er}**, **2e/ 2^e**, **3e/3^e**....

Du premier au centième

From premier to centième

Son dixième anniversaire.

His tenth birthday.

Sa première communion

His first communion.

Trois centièmes de seconde

Three hundredths of a second.

Ce cent troisième festival.

This hundred and third festival.

Vous êtes notre cent millième visiteur.

You are our hundred thousandth visitor.

Jusqu'à 100 up to 100

Le Second amendement

the Second amendment

Mon 21^e anniversaire

my 21st birthday

Quatre centièmes de seconde

Four hundredths of a second

Sa 24^e tentative

His 24th attempt

La cent-unième division US aéroportée.

The US Hundred and first airborne division

101e cent unième or cent-unième

111e cent onzième

121^e cent vingt et unième

133e cent trente-troisième

1550^e mille cinq cent cinquantième

Dates

1990 Mille neuf cent quatre-vingt dix

1887 Mille huit cent quatre vingt sept

2000 Deux mille

2019 Deux mille dix neuf

2030 Deux mille trente

Note: For all years that end with the number zero (0), you will use the word **l'an** [l-o-n] *year*. For years ending in any number other than zero, you will use the term **l'année** [l-ah-nay] *year*.

Note: years **A.D.** And the years **B.C.** In French we say **ap. JC** and **av. JC** respectively. These shorthands

refer to the eras “*before Jesus Christ*” and “*after Jesus Christ*”.

apres Jesus-Christ [ah-pray] [j-ay-z-oo][k-r-ee],
avant Jesus-Christ. [ah-vont] [j-ay-z-oo][k-r-ee],

200 BC = **200 av. JC**= *l’an Deux Cent avant Jesus-Christ.*

LE + NUMBER + MONTH + YEAR

Ai un rendez-vous chez le dentiste le 3 octobre.

Have a dentist appointment on October 3rd.

Le 6, je dîne avec Henri.

On the 6th, I have dinner with Henri.

Aujourd’hui, nous sommes le 15 mai 2016.

Today is May 15, 2016.

Mon anniversaire est le 16.

My birthday is on the 16th.

Aujourd’hui, sommes nous lundi.

Today is Monday.

Quel jour sommes-nous?

What day is today?

Quel jour est le concert ?

What day is the concert ?

Quand c'est le concert ?

When is the concert?

Le concert est mardi.

The concert is on Tuesday.

C'est mardi.

It's Tuesday.

Noël tombe quel jour cette année?

Christmas is going to be on what day this year?

Ton anniversaire est le combien?

What is the date of your birthday ?

C'est le 16.

It's the 16th.

J'ai un rendez-vous chez mon dentiste mardi 3 octobre.

I have an appointment with my dentist on Tuesday October 3rd.

Samedi, j'ai dîné avec Henri.

Saturday, I had dinner with Henri.

Aujourd'hui, nous sommes jeudi 15 mai 2016.

Today is Thursday May 15, 2016.

Mon anniversaire est mercredi.

My birthday is Wednesday.

Note: Don't say: sur le samedi, en samedi, le samedi, sur samedi, au samedi... j'ai dîné avec Henri, but say; samedi, j'ai dîné avec Henri.

Note: LE + DAY; means that you do something every week on that day.

Le lundi, je dîne toujours au restaurant.
On Mondays, I always dine at the restaurant.
J'ai une classe de français le vendredi.
I have a French class on Friday.

EN + MONTH + YEAR & EN + YEAR

J'ai un rendez-vous chez le dentiste en octobre.
I have a dentist appointment in October.

Nous sommes en mai 2016.
We are in May 2016.

En 2011, je vais aller à Paris.
In 2011, I will go to Paris.

J'ai 44 ans. J'm 44.
I am 44 years old. I'm 44.

Je suis allée en France il y a deux ans.

I went to France two years ago.

LIRE L'HEURE TELLING TIME

The Days of the Week. • Les jours de la semaine.

#	French	Pronunciation	English	Origin
1	lundi	<i>luh_mdee</i>	Monday	Moon
2	mardi	<i>mahrdee</i>	Tuesday	Mars
3	mercredi	<i>maircruhdee</i>	Wednesday	Mercury
4	jeudi	<i>juhdee</i>	Thursday	Jupiter
5	vendredi	<i>vah_mdruhdee</i>	Friday	Venus
6	samedi	<i>sahmdee</i>	Saturday	Saturn
7	dimanche	<i>deemah_nsh</i>	Sunday	Sun

The Months of the Year • Les mois de l'année

#	French	Pron.	English
01	janvier	<i>jzah_nveeyay</i>	January
02	février	<i>fayvreeyay</i>	February
03	mars	<i>mahrse</i>	March
04	avril	<i>ahvrill</i>	April
05	mai	<i>maye</i>	May
06	juin	<i>jzwa_n</i>	Juin
07	juillet	<i>jzooeeyay</i>	July
08	août	<i>oot/oo</i>	August
09	septembre	<i>septah_mbruh</i>	September
10	octobre	<i>oktuhbruh</i>	October
11	novembre	<i>novah_mbruh</i>	November
12	décembre	<i>daysah_mbruh</i>	December

WHAT TIME IS IT?

Quelle heure est-il ?



Il est 4 heures
et quart



Il est 10
heures moins



Il est 6 heures
et quart



Il est 10 heures



Il est 3
heures 10



Il est 4 heures
moins 20



Il est 5 heures
moins 5



Il est 8 heures
et quart



Il est 1 heure
moins 25



Il est 7
heures 5



Il est neuf heures
et demie



Il est 11
heures 20



Il est 4 heures
moins 5



Il est une
heure dix



Il est 11
heures 20



Il est midi 25



Il est deux
heures et quart



Il est cinq
heures et demie



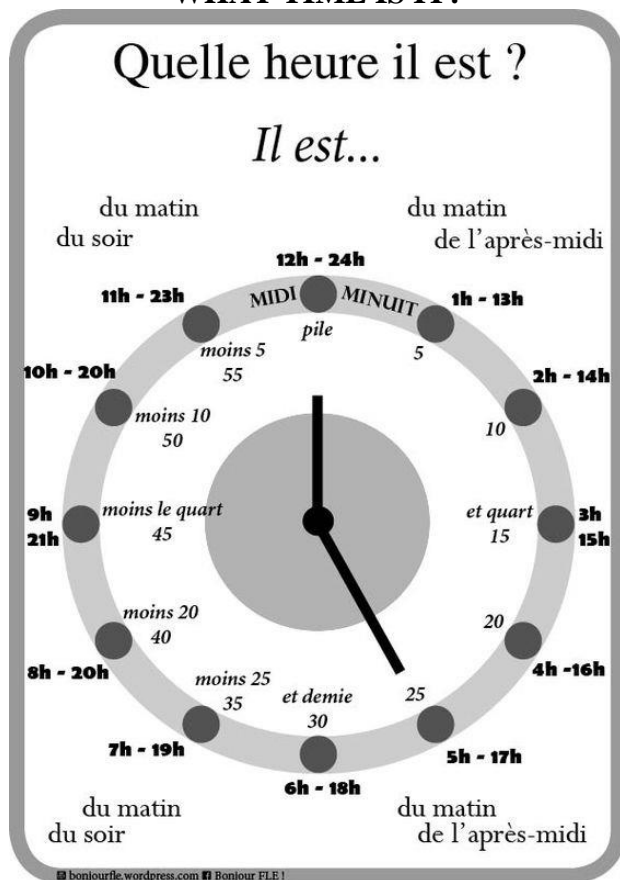
Il est trois
heures 5



Il est neuf
heures 25

ISLCollective.com

WHAT TIME IS IT?



TERMES MATHÉMATIQUES Math terms



In twos = **Par deux** in threes = **Par trois** odd = **impair** even = **pair** to count = **Compter** digit = **chiffre**

Système de numérotation

Numbering System

Natural numbers = **nombre naturels**

Real numbers = **nombre réels**

Complex numbers = **nombre complexes**

Integer/ Integerd = **entier/ entiers**
positive/negative integer = **entier positif / négatif**
Prime number = **Nombre premier**
whole number= **Nombre entire**

Fractions et décimales

fractions and decimals

1/2; one half; **Un demi** **2/3**; two thirds; **Deux tiers**
1/5; one fifth; **Un cinquième** **3 /5**; three fifths;
Trios cinquièmes

***Note:** 2/3; 2 is **numérateur** (numerator) and 3 is **dénominateur** (denominator).*

Calculs/Calcul

Calculations/calculation

Calculator = **calculatrice**, addition = **addition**
add = **additionner**, plus= **plus**, total= **total**
Sum= **somme**, subtraction= **soustraction**

difference= **difference**, reduce= **réduire**,
minus= **moins**

2+2=4 Deux plus deux égale quatre

Two plus two equals four.

2-2=0 Deux moins deux égale zero

Two minus two equals zero

Multiplication= **multiplication**

multiply= **multiplier**

3 × 3 = 9 Trios fois trios égale neuf

three **times** three equals nine

lots of= **Beaucoup de**, product= **produit**,

calculate= **calculer**

Division= **division**, divide= **diviser**,

9 ÷ 3 = 3 Neuf divisé par trios égale trois

nine **divided by** three equals three

remainder= **rest**, share= **Partager**

Estimate= **estimer**, double= **double**, half= **moitié**

triple= **triple**

Longueur Length

Long= **long**, longer= **Plus long** (ue/ues),

longest= **Le/la les/ plus long** (ue/s),

short= **court**, shorter= **Plus court** (e/s)

shortest= **Le/la les/ plus court** (e/s)

Les mesures Measures

Distance= **distance**, length= **longueur**,

kilometer= **kilometer**, millimeter= **millimètre**

centimeter= **centimètre** meter= **mètre**

Mile= **mile**, perimeter= **périmètre**,

area= **aire**, square meter= **Mètre carré**

square centimeter= **Centimètre carré**,

square mile= **Mile carré**

Kilogram= **kilogramme**, Gram= **gramme**

Pound= **livre**, Ounce= **once**, Litre= **Litre**

Millilitre= **Millilitre**, **Mathematics**

Centilitre= **Centilitre**, Gallon= **Gallon**

Full= **Plein** (e/s), Empty= **Vide**(s)

ARGENT Money

Penny= **penny** two pence= **Deux pence**,
five pence= **Cinq pence**, ten pence= **Dix pence**
twenty pence= **Vingt pence**, fifty pence=
Cinquante pence, one pound= **Une livre**,
two pounds= **Deux livres**

FORME ET ESPACE

shape and space

Polygones



Triangle= **triangle**, square= **carré**,



Rectangle= **rectangle**, pentagon=**pentagone**,



Hexagon= **hexagone**, octagon= **octogone**

Circle= **Cercle** (disque)



Semi-circle= **Demi disque**



Crescent= **croissant**



Trois formes dimensionnelles

3-Dimensional shapes

Spher **sphere**,



Cube= **cube**

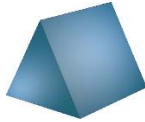


Cone, **cone**

Cylinder= **cylinder**



Pyramid= **pyramide**



Prism= **Prisme**



Hemisphere= **Demi-sphère**

Plus de termes géométriques

More geometric terms

Corner= **sommet**, edge= **Arête**, angle= **angle**,

acute= **aigu**, obtuse= **obtus**, side= **côté**, flat= **plat**

Curved= **incurvée** (*feminine*)/**incurvé** (*masculine*)

Symmetrical= **symétrique**, reflection= **réflexion**

Turn= **tour**, round= **Rond/arrondi**, hollow= **creux**

big= **grand**, small= **petit**

Directions

Forward= **vers l'avant**, backward= **en arrière**,

Top= **Haut**, bottom= **bas**, left=**la gauche**

Right= **droite**, horizontal=**horizontal**,

Vertical= **verticale**, inside= **à l'intérieur**,

Below= **au dessous de**, above= **au dessus de**,

Next to= **à côté de**, in front of= **devant de**,

Behind= **derrière**

Grammaire française de base

Basic French grammar



Articles are words that are attached to nouns. In English, we use the words *the*, *an* or *a* in front of nouns. In French, the **articles** we use have to conform to the **gender** of the noun about which we are speaking. What this means is that each “**person**, **place** or **thing**” that exists has a **gender** attached to it. These articles will tell you the gender of the noun.

French Articles					
Definite the		Indefinite a, an, or some		Partitive some, any	
le	masculine singular	un	masculine singular	du	masculine singular
la	feminine singular	une	feminine singular	de la	feminine singular
l'	masculine or feminine singular	des	masculine or feminine plural	de l'	masculine or feminine singular (before a vowel sound)
les	masculine or feminine plural			des	masculine or feminine plural

L'Article Defini: In English when we are talking about something specific, we use the word '*the*'. This is called the definite article or *l'article defini*, [l-ar-tee-k-le][day-fee-nee]. We will first look at the **singular form** before moving onto the **plural form**.

Singular: Masculine, *le*, [l-uh], Feminine, *la*, [l-ah], Vowel or h, *l'*, [l]

If you need to place an article in front of a **verb** that begins with a **vowel** or with the letter **h** (which in French is **silent**), you will use the letter **L**, followed by an **apostrophe**.

The game, ***le jeu***, [l-uh][j-uh]

The casino, ***le casino***, [l-uh][k-as-ee-no]

The table, ***la table***, [l-ah][tah-b-l]

The cup, ***la tasse***, [l-ah][tah-ss]

The bee, ***l'abeille***, [l-ah-bay]

The hexagon, ***l'hexagone***, [l-ex-a-gone]

***Note:** note how the l' before a noun becomes blended into the noun itself when you are saying it aloud. Practice this a few times.*

Plural: For **group of nouns** in a general way, use ***les***.

Plural masculine or feminine, ***Les***, [l-ay]

The books, ***les livres***, [l-ay][lee-v-re]

The oranges, ***les oranges***, [l-ay][oh-ron-j]

L'Article Indefini: We will now move on to the Indefinite Article, or *l'article indefini*. This is used when we are speaking about **something unspecific**, where in English we would say the word *a* or *an*. We would use these to describe a noun in general instead of one specific item.

Singular: Masculine, *un*, [uhn], Feminine, *une*, [oo-n], A book, *un livre*, [uhn][l-ee-v-r], An apple, *une pomme*, [oo-n][p-uh-m]

Plural: Plural form of unspecific or indefinite articles is *des* (some, many..).

Multiple books, *des livres*, [d-ay][l-ee-v-rs]
,Many apples, *des pommes*, [d-ay][p-uh-m]

*Note: notice how one of the above examples is **feminine** and one of them is **masculine** (as we saw above with **un** et(and) **une**) but when it comes to the **plural** form, they **both** are attached to the article **des**.*

L'Article Partitif: The Partitive Article is used when we are talking about only **a part** of

something, rather than the whole of it. This is often used when we are speaking about **food**. This is used when the **noun** is something we **cannot count**, which is why it is usually used with **food**.

Singular: In English, we would use the word *some* in this place.

Masculine, *du*, [doo], Feminine, *de la*, [d-uh][lah],
Vowel or h, *de l'*, [d-uh][l]

*Note: notice again how if the **noun** begins with either a **vowel** or the letter **h** (which would be **silent**) **de** is used, followed by the letter **l** and an **apostrophe**.*

Some cheese, *du fromage*, [doo][fr-oh-mah-j], Some pie, *de la tarte*, [d-uh][lah][tar-t], Some money, *de l'argent*, [d-uh][l-ar-j-ont]

Plural: Plural Partitive Articles are used when we are talking about a **portion** of food/thing that contains multiple items. This article is the same as indefinite items in multiples as above.

Des, [d-ay], Some Spinach, *des épinards*, [d-ay-s][eh-pee-n-ar-d], Some Pasta, *des pâtes*, [d-ay][pah-t-s]

Noms masculins et féminins et leurs articles
Masculine and Feminine Nouns and Their Articles

French Nouns			
Noun Singular		Noun Plural	
For most French plural nouns, add an '‑s' to the single form. The '‑s' is never pronounced with the word.			
la capitale	the capital	les capitales	the capitals
l'orange	the orange	les oranges	the oranges
For French singular nouns ending in '‑au' or '‑eu', the plural form requires adding an '‑x' at the end of the word.			
le château	the castle	les chateaux	the castles
le jeu	the game	les jeux	the games
For French singular nouns ending in '‑s' '‑x' or '‑z', the nouns' plural form remains unchanged.			
la voix	the voice	les voix	the voices
le fils	the son	les fils	the sons
le nez	the nose	les nez	the noses
For French singular nouns ending in '‑al', add an '‑aux' to the singular form to form plural nouns.			
un canal	the canal	des canaux	the canals

Gender in French			
French nouns are either masculine or feminine. Nouns that refer to males are usually masculine, and those that refer to females are usually feminine.			
le garçon	the boy	la jeune fille	the young girl
le livre	the book	la chaise	the chair
le soleil	the sun	la lune	the moon
<i>The most common masculine noun endings are:</i>			
-age	-èle	-isme	-phone
-aire	-eur	-ment	-scope
-at	-exe	-oir	
<i>The most common feminine noun endings are:</i>			
-ade	-esse	-ise	-té
-aine	-ette	-sion	-trice
-ance	-euse	-ssion	-ude
-ence	-ie	-tion	-ure
-ère			
Words that are masculine in French		Words that are feminine in French	
Letters of the alphabet		Brand names of automobile	
Days of the week, months, and numbers		Fruits and nuts	
Most trees and bushes			
Foreign loan words			

There are some nouns that are **feminine** and some that are **masculine**, while others are **plural** with different articles with some exceptions.

Noms féminins et leurs articles Feminine Nouns and Their Articles

School subjects are **feminine**, such as;

Chemistry, *la chimie*, [l-ah][shee-mee]

Gym, *la gymnastique* [l-ah][j-eem-nas-tee-k]

Language, *la langue* [l-ah][l-on-g]

Cars and car names are feminine. For example;

A car, *une auto* [oo-n][oh-toe]

A car, *une voiture* [oo-n][v-wah-too-r]

A Mazda 3, *la Mazda Trois*, [l-ah]Mazda][tr-wah]

Most **foods** that **end** with the letter **e** are **feminine** nouns.

A banana, *la banane*, [l-ah][bah-na-n]

A tomato, *la tomate*, [l-ah][t-oh-mat]

An apple, *la pomme*, [l-ah][po-m]

Continents are feminine nouns.

Australia, *l'Australie*, [l-os-t-ra-lee],
Europe, *L'Europe* [l-you-rup],
Asia, *L'Asie*, [l-ah-see]

Mostly all **countries** that end in the letter **e** are **feminine** nouns. The countries below may not seem like they end with the letter **e** but **their French names** do.

France, *la France*, [l-ah][f-ron-s] (rolled r)
China, *la Chine*, [l-ah][sh-een]
Patagonia, *La Patagonie*, [l-ah][pat-a-go-nee]

Masculine Nouns and Their Articles Noms masculins et leurs articles

The **calendar** itself is a **masculine** noun as well as the days of the **week**, the **months** and the **seasons**.

Calendar, *le calendrier*, [l-uh][k-al-on-dree-ay]
December, *le décembre*, [l-uh][day-s-om-br-uh]
Summer, *l'ete*, [l-ay-tay]
Tuesday, *le Mardi*, [l-uh][mar-dee]

A **specific date** is **masculine**.

June 6th, *le six juin*, [l-uh][s-ee-s][j-w-an]

October 12th, *le douze octobre*, [l-uh][doo-z][o-k-toh-b-ruh]

Colors are **masculine** nouns as well.

Red, *le rouge*, [l-uh][roo-j]

Orange, *l'orange*, [l-oh-ron-j]

Pink, *le rose*, [l-uh][r-oh-z](rolled r)

Drinks are most often **masculine**.

Coffee, *le cafe*, [l-uh][k-af-ay]

Juice, *le jus*, [l-uh][j-oo-s]

Tea, *le the*, [l-uh][t-ay]

Foods that **don't end** with the letter *e* are **masculine** nouns.

Corn, *le mais*, [l-uh][mah-yee-s]

Sandwich, *le sandwich*, [l-uh][s-and-wee-ch]

Countries that **don't end** with *e* are **masculine** nouns.

Canada, *le Canada*, [l-uh][k-ana-da]

Japan, *le Japon*, [l-uh][j-ap-on]

Directions on a compass are **masculine** nouns.

North, *le nord*, [l-uh][n-or]

South, *le sud*, [l-uh][soo-d]

East, *l'est*, [l-ess-t]

West, *l'ouest*, [l-oo-ess-t]

Languages are **masculine** nouns.

French, *le francais*, [l-uh][f-ron-say]

Greek, *le grec*, [l-uh][g-rek]

Letters of the alphabet are **masculine** nouns.

A, *le a*, [l-uh][ah], D, *le d*, [l-uh][d-ay], P, *le p*, [l-uh][pay]

Plural Nouns: Plural nouns are accompanied by *les* or *des* articles.

Business, *les affaires*, [l-ay][ah-f-air]
Asparagus, *les asperges*, [l-ay][ah-s-pair-j]
Luggage, *les bagages*, [l-ay][bah-g-ah-j]
Advice, *les conseils*, [l-ay][k-on-say]

Noms dans un regard plus profond Nouns in deeper look

A noun can be a *place*, a *person* or a *thing*. **In the French language, everything is gendered.** This determine how we write or say them. The only guide is, they will all be paired with their appropriate article.

Places: United States, *Les Etats-Unis* [lay][eh-tat][oo-nee] London, *Londres* [l-oh-n-d-ruh]
France, *France* [fron-s]
Mexico, *Mexique* [m-eks-eek]
Paris, *Paris* [pah-ree]

People (professions and family members): Doctor, *Docteur* [dok-t-ur], Dentist, *Dentiste* [don-tee-s-t], Mailman, *Postier* [poh-s-tee-ay], Dog Walker, *Promeneur de Chien* [p-roh-men-ur][duh][sh-yen],

Lawyer, **Avocat** [ah-vo-k-ah], Teacher, **Professeur** [pro-f-ess-err], Father, **Père** [p-air], Mother, **Mère** [m-air], Sister, **soeur** [s-urr], Brother, **frère** [f-r-air], Female Cousin, **Cousine** [k-oo-zee-n], Male cousin, **Cousin** [k-oo-z-in], Aunt, **Tante** [t-on-t], Uncle, **Oncle** [on-k-leh], Grandmother, **Grandmère** [g-ron-d-m-air], Grandfather, **Grandpère** [g-ron-d-p-air]

Things: Table, **Table** [t-ah-b-l-uh], Chair, **Chaise** [sh-eh-z], Glass, **Verre** [v-air], Coffee, **Cafe** [k--ah-fay], Tea, **The** [t-ay], School, **L'école** [l-ay-k-ohl]

Animals: Dog, **Chien** [sh-yen], Cat, **Chat** [sh-ah], Mouse, **Souris** [s-oo-ree], Hamster, **Hamster** [ahm-st-air], Snake, **Serpent** [s-air-pon-t], Horse, **Cheval** [sh-eh-va-l], Tiger, **Tigre** [tee-g-ruh].

Colors: Red, **Rouge** [roo-j], Orange, **Orange** [oh-ron-j], Yellow, **Jaune** [j-oh-nuh], Green, **Vert** [v-air], Blue, **Bleu** [b-l-uh], Purple, **Violet** [vee-oh-l-ett], Pink, **Rose** [roh-z], Black, **Noir** [n-wah-r], White, **Blanc** [b-lon-k]

Months of the Year: January *le Janvier*, [luh][j-on-vee-ay], February *le février*, [luh][fay-v-ree-ay], March *le mars* [luh][mah-r-se], April *l'avril*, [l-ah-v-ree-l], May *le mai*, [luh][may], June *le juin*, [luh][j-wah-n], July *le juillet* [luh][j-wee-ay], August *le août* [luh][oot], September *le septembre*, [luh][sep-tom-b-ruh], October, *l'octobre*, [l-oct-oh-b-ruh], November, *le novembre*, [luh][no-vom-b-ruh], December, *le décembre*, [luh][day-som-b-ruh]

Singular Nouns: Some nouns are always singular with a **singular article**.

Stairs, *Un escalier* [uhn][ess-k-al-ee-yay]
Fireworks, *Un feu d'artifice*
[uhn][fuh][d-ar-tee-fee-suh],
Jeans, *Un Jean* [uhn][j-eeen]
Pants, *Un pantalon* [uhn][pa-n-tah-lo-n]
Pyjamas, *Un pyjama* [uhn][pee-ja-mah],
The dishes, *La Vaisselle* [lah][vay-sell],
Oats, *Avoine* [ah-v-wah-nuh],
The News, *L'actualité* [l-ah-k-too-ah-lee-tay],

TERMINAISONS DES NOMS

MASCULINS

- eau
- age
- isme
- ment
- et
- oir
- ail

FEMININS

- tion
- ance, -ence
- té
- ie
- ette
- elle
- aison
- tude
- esse
- ure

Les Pronoms

French Pronouns			
Subject Pronouns			
Singular Pronouns		Plural Pronouns	
je (j')	I	nous	we
tu	you (informal)	vous	you (polite)
il	he, it	ils	they (masculine)
elle	she, it	elles	they (feminine)
on	one, you, we, they		
Disjunctive Pronouns			
moi	I, me	nous	us
toi	you	vous	you
lui	him	eux	them (masculine)
elle	her	elles	them (feminine)
Direct Object Pronouns			
me (m')	me	nous	us
te (t')	you (singular informal)	vous	you (singular/plural polite)
le (l')	him, it	les	them
la (l')	her, it		

Les pronoms personnels, [l-ay][p-r-oh-no-m][pair-s-on-el] Personal pronouns , are pronouns which are used in place of a person.

I, **Je**, [j-uh], You, **tu**, [too], He, **il**, [ee-l], She, **elle** [el], We, **on**, [oh-n](light n sound), We, **nous**, [new], You (plural), **vous**, [v-oo], They, **ils**[eel] (masculine) or **elles**, [el] feminine.

Note: on is an informal pronoun that can replace nous to mean we, though the proper way to say we is by using nous.

Note: plural ils and elle, (they) has two different forms, but pronounced exactly the same way as the singular form of he and she.

les pronoms impersonnels [eh-m-pair-soh-n-el]
Impersonal pronouns, are pronouns that replace something in a sentence that is not a person. This could be a **noun**, an **amount of something**, a **place**, or a **quantity**.

This, Ce, [suh], That, ça, [sah], Multiple, plusieurs, [p-loo-see-uhr-s], Who, qui, [k-ee], What, que, [k-u-h], Which One, lequel, [leh-k-el]

votre guide des temps de verbe

Your Guide to Verb Tenses



LE PRÉSENT

The Present Tense

*Je mange maintenant.
(I am eating now.)*



LE PASSÉ COMPOSÉ

The Past Tense

*J'ai fait mes devoirs hier soir.
(I did my homework last night.)*



L'IMPARFAIT

The Imperfect Tense

*Elles étudiaient à l'université pendant quatre ans.
(They studied at the university for four years.)*



LE FUTUR

The Future Tense

J'irai en France la semaine prochaine.
(I will go to France next week.)



LE CONDITIONNEL

The Conditional Tense

- Present Conditional

Je mangerais la pomme si elle était mure.
(I would eat the apple if it were ripe.)

- Past Conditional

J'aurais mangé la pomme si elle avait été mure.
(I would have eaten the apple if it had been ripe.)



LE SUBJONCTIF

The Subjunctive Tense

Je souhaite qu'il vienne avec moi.
(I wish him to come with me.)



LE PASSÉ SIMPLE

The Simple Past or Preterite

Elle vit son frère l'approcher.
(She saw her brother approaching.)

French Verbs and Tenses			
<i>Present Tense</i> Le présent	<i>Imperfect Tense</i> L'imparfait	<i>Past Definite Tense</i> Le passé simple	<i>Future Tense</i> Le futur
Parler			
<i>Verb Conjugation #1</i>			
je parle	je parlais	j'ai parlé	je parlerai
tu parles	tu parlais	tu as parlé	tu parleras
il (elle) parle	il (elle) parlait	il (elle) a parlé	il (elle) parlera
nous parlons	nous parlions	nous avons parlé	nous parlerons
vous parlez	vous parliez	vous avez parlé	vous parlerez
ils (elles) parlent	ils (elles) parlaient	ils (elles) parlaient	ils (elles) parleront
Finir			
<i>Verb Conjugation #2</i>			
je finis	je finissais	j'ai fini	je finirai
tu finis	tu finissais	tu as fini	tu finiras
il (elle) finit	il (elle) finissait	il (elle) a fini	il (elle) finira
nous finissons	nous finissions	nous avons fini	nous finirons
vous finissez	vous finissiez	vous avez fini	vous finirez
ils (elles) finissent	ils (elles) finissaient	ils (elles) ont fini	ils (elles) finiront
Vendre			
<i>Verb Conjugation #3</i>			
je vends	je vendais	j'ai vendu	je vendrai
tu vends	tu vendais	tu as vendu	tu vendras
il (elle) vend	il (elle) vendait	il (elle) a vendu	il (elle) vendra
nous vendons	nous vendions	nous avons vendu	nous vendrons
vous vendez	vous vendiez	vous avez vendu	vous vendrez
ils (elles) vendent	ils (elles) vendaient	ils (elles) ont vendu	ils (elles) vendront

*Verbs or les verbes, [lay][v-air-b], are the **action words** in a sentence. They have to be adjusted in every sentence according to **who** or **what** they are in reference to and in **what tense** we are speaking. This adjustment of a verb is called **conjugation** (as same in French). We will begin with the most common verbs and their conjugation.*

To be, **Être** [et-ruh], To have, **Avoir** [ah-v-war]

To go, **Aller** [ah-lay], To Do, **Faire** [f-air]

To say, **Dire** [dee-r], To know, **Savoir**, [sa-v-war],

To live, **Vivre** [vee-v-ruh], To want, **Vouloir** [voo-l-

war], To see, **Voir** [v-war], To hold, **Tenir** [tuh-neer]

To be able to, **Pouvoir** [poo-v-war]

Verbs **être** (be) and **avoir** (have) are the two most common.

 LES VERBES ESSENTIELS AU PRÉSENT DE L'INDICATIF	
<p>ÊTRE Je suis Tu es Il / Elle / On est</p> <p>Nous sommes Vous êtes Ils / Elles sont</p>	<p>AVOIR J'ai Tu as Il / Elle / On a</p> <p>Nous avons Vous avez Ils / Elles ont</p>
<p>ALLER Je vais Tu vas Il / Elle / On va</p> <p>Nous allons Vous allez Ils / Elles vont</p>	<p>VENIR Je viens Tu viens Il / Elle / On vient</p> <p>Nous venons Vous venez Ils / Elles viennent</p>
	

Present Tense: Avoir Et Être

We will begin with the verb to have or être. Just like when we change a verb in English according to who we are talking about (I am, you are, she is etc.)

Verbe **être** : To be: *Je suis , Nous sommes, Tu es, Vous êtes, Il est, Ils sont, Elle est, Elles sont, On est*

Verbe **Avoir** : To have: *J'ai*, Nous avons, Tu as, Vous avez , Il a, Ils ont, Elle a, Elles ont, On a*

Note: Je ai becomes j'ai because there are two vowels side-by-side.

Irregular verbs don't follow any sort of pattern and you have to just **memorize the conjugation** of them.

Conjugation of regular verbs

For **regular verbs**, remove its ending letters and leave the root then **add an ending** that corresponds

with the **personal pronoun** and the **tense** in which you are speaking. This called Congugation.

Verbs can be classified into 4 groups;

1. Those which end in **-er**
2. Those which end in **-ir**
3. Those which end in **-tir**
4. Those which end in **-re**

1. Those which end in -er.

*To play, **Jouer** [j-oo-ay], to jump, **Sauter** [s-oh-tay]
to hide, **Cacher** [kah-sh-ay]*

*Je, -e, Tu, -e, il/elle/on, -e, Nous, -ons, Vous, -ez,
ils/elles, -ent.*

For these verbs, you will take off the **-er** and you are left with the root: **Jou, saut, cach**. Then you add the endings.

*Je **Jouer**, je **Sauter**, je **Cacher**
Tu **Jouer**, tu **Sauter**, tu **Cacher***

Il/elle/on Jouer,
il/elle/on Sauter,
il/elle/on Cacher

<i>Nous Jouer,</i>	<i>nous Sauter,</i>	<i>nous Cacher</i>
<i>Vous Jouer,</i>	<i>vous Sauter,</i>	<i>vous Cacher</i>
<i>ils/elles Jouer,</i>	<i>ils/elles Sauter,</i>	<i>ils/elles Cacher</i>

2. Those which end in -ir

For verbs that end in **-ir**, remove the last two letters to get to the **root**, then add the endings below, which differ based on the verb. We will look at the most common ones. Practice conjugating them and pronouncing them.

To finish, Finir [f-ee-near]

Je -is, Tu -is, il/elle/on -it, Nous -issons, Vous -issez
ils/elles -issent.

To see, Voir [v-wah-r]

*Je –is, Tu –is, il/elle/on –it, Nous –yons, Vous –yez,
Ils/elles –ient*

3. Those which end in -tir

*To leave, **Partir** [par-tee-r], To feel, **Sentir**, [s-on-tee-r]*

For verbs that end in -tir, take off all three of these letters to get to the root

Je –s, Tu –s, il/elle/on –t, Nous –tons, Vous –tez, ils/elles –tent,

4. Those which end in -re

*To sell, **Vendre** [von-d-rr]
to return, **Rendre** [ron-d-rr]*

For verbs that end in -re, remove these last two letters and add on the endings below.

Je -s, Tu -s, il/elle/on -, Nous -ons, Vous -ez
ils/elles -ent*

For verbs ending in **-re, nothing is added to the end when you are using the personal pronouns of **il, elle** or **on**.*

There is a verb that ends in **-re** that you may use quite often, though it is an irregular verb (like **être** or **avoir**).

*To take, **Prendre** [p-r-on-d-rr]*

When getting the root of this verb you will take off the last three letters (**-dre**) to get the root word **pren**.

Je -ds, Tu -ds, il/elle/on -d, Nous -ons, Vous -ez, ils/elles -nent

Conjugate some more common verbs

To go, **Aller** [ah-lay],
to be able to **Pouvoir** [poo-v-w-or],
to know, **Savoir** [sah-v-w-or]

*Je vais, Tu vas, Il/elle/on va, Nous allons, Vous allez,
ils/elles vont*

*Je peux, Tu peux, il/elle/on peut, Nous pouvons, Vous
pouvez, ils/elles peuvent*

*Je sais, Tu sais, Il/elle/on sait, Nous savons, Vous
savez, Ils/elles savent*

Conjuguer des verbes au passé

Conjugating Verbs in Past-Tense

Participe passé.

The Past Participle

When we are speaking about something that happened in the **past** we will change the ending of

the **verb**, just like we did when conjugating the present tense verbs, but we will change them in a different way. After we change the ending of the verb, this form is called the **Past Participle**.

ER Verbs: We conjugate verbs that end in an **-er** by removing this ending and substituting it with an **'é'**.

Parler [par-lay], *to speak*, = **Parlé** [par-lay]

Aller [ah-lay], *to go*, = **Allé** [ah-lay]

Arriver [ah-ree-vay], *to arrive*, = **Arrivé** [ah-ree-vay],

Entrer [on-t-ray], *to enter*, = **Entré** [on-t-ray]

IR Verbs: We conjugate verbs that end in an **-ir** by removing this ending and substituting it with an **'i'**.

Finir [fee-nee-r], *to finish*, = **Fini** [fee-nee]

Mentir [mon-tee-r], *to lie*, = **Menti** [mon-tee],

Choisir [sh-wah-see-r], *to choose*, = **Choisi** [sh-wah-see]

RE Verbs: We conjugate verbs that end in an **-re** by removing this ending and substituting it with a **‘u’**. Some examples are below;

Vendre [v-on-d-ruh], *to sell*, = **Vendu** [v-on-d-oo]

Rendre [ron-d-ruh], *to return something*, = **Rendu** [ron-d-oo]

Mordre [mor-d-ruh], *to bite*, = **Mordu** [mor-d-oo]

The Irregular Past Participles

Some verbs have a different letter added.

Faire, *to do* = **Fait**,

Lire, *to read* = **Lu**

Pouvoir, *to be able to* = **Pu**,

Prendre, *to take* = **Pris**,

Savoir, *to know* = **Su**,

Venir, *to come* = **Venu**,

Voir, *to see* = **Vu**,

Boire, *to drink* = **Bu**,

Conduire, *to drive* = **Conduit**,

Connaitre, *to know* = **Connu**,

Croire, *to believe* = **Cru**,

Dé couvrir, *to discover* = **Dé couvert**,

Dire, *to say* = **Dit**,

Écrire *to write* = **Écrit**,

Apprendre, *to learn* = **Appris**,

Être, *to be* = **Été**,

Avoir, *to have* = **Eu**

Auxiliaries in Passé Composé: Instead of saying “I ran,” in French we say “I have run”. We use the verb **avoir** (to have) to help us explain what someone did. In this case, the verb **avoir** in its present-tense form is called the Auxiliary or **L’auxiliaire**. This form of conjugation is called **passé composé**.

The subject + an auxiliary + the past participle

We have learned the present-tense conjugation of the verb **avoir**;

J’ai , **Tu as** , **Il a** , **Elle a** , **On a** , **Nous avons** , **Vous avez** , **Ils ont** , **Elles ont**.

Now **past-tense conjugations** of verbs with **avoir** as the helper verb.

Visiter [vee-zee-tay] = **Visité** [vee-zee-tay]

J'**ai** visité [j-ay][vee-zee-tay]

Tu **as** visité [too][ah][vee-zee-tay]

Il **a** visité [eel][ah][vee-zee-tay]

Elle **a** visité [el][ah][vee-zee-tay]

On **a** visité [ohn][ah][vee-zee-tay]

Nous **avons** visité [new][ah-v-oh][vee-zee-tay]

Vous **avez** visité [v-oo][ah-vay][vee-zee-tay]

Ils **ont** visité [eel][oh-nt][vee-zee-tay]

Elles **ont** visité [el][oh-nt][vee-zee-tay]

Entendre [on-ton-d-ruh] becomes **Entendu** [on-ton-doo]

J'**ai** entendu, Tu **as** entendu, Il **a** entendu, Elle **a** entendu, On **a** entendu, Nous **avons** entendu, Vous **avez** entendu, Ils **ont** entendu, Elles **ont** entendu

Some times we use the **present tense** of *Être* as the auxiliary verb to form **passé compose**. Many of these are verbs that end in **-ir**.

Je **suis** , Tu **es** , Il **est**, Elle **est** , On **est**, Nous **sommes**
[n-oo][sum], Vous **êtes** [v-oos][ett-e], Ils **sont**
[eel][s-oh-nt], Elles **sont** [el][s-oh-nt].

Partir [par-tee-r] = **Parti** [par-tee]

Je **suis** parti [j-uh][s-wee][par-tee]
Tu **es** parti [too][ay][par-tee]
Il **est** parti [eel][ay][par-tee]
Elle **est** parti [el][ay][par-tee]
On **est** parti [ohn][ay][par-tee]
Nous **sommes** [n-oo][sum][par-tee]
Vous **etes** [v-oos][ett-e][par-tee]
Ils **sont** [eel][s-oh-nt][par-tee]
Elles **sont** [el][s-oh-nt][par-tee]

Entrer [on-t-ray] = **Entré** [on-t-ray]

Je **suis** entré [j-uh][s-wee][on-t-ray]
Tu **es** entré [too][ay][on-t-ray]
Il **est** entré [eel][ay][on-t-ray]
Elle **est** entré [el][ay][on-t-ray]
On **est** entré [ohn][ay][on-t-ray]
Nous **sommes** entré [n-oo][sum][on-t-ray]

Vous **etes** entré [v-oos][ett-e][on-t-ray]

Ils **sont** entré [eel][s-oh-nt][on-t-ray]

Elles **sont** entré [el][s-oh-nt][on-t-ray]

*All of the irregular verbs in the **passé composé**, which use the **present tense** form of **Être** as their auxiliary are below.*

Devenir to become , = **devenu**

Revenir to come back = **revenue**

Monter to climb = **monté**

Rester to stay = **resté**

Sortir to exit = **sorti**

Passer to pass = **passé**

Venir to come = **venu**

Aller to go = **allé**

Naître to be born = **né**

Descendre to descend = **descend**

Entrer to enter = **entré**

Rentrer to re-enter = **rentré**

Tomber to fall = **tombé**

Retourner to return = **retourné**

Arriver to arrive = **arrive**

Mourir to die = **mort**

Partir to leave becomes **parti**

French Adjectives			
Singular Adjectives			
Masculine Singular		Feminine Singular	
un livre rouge	a red book	une robe rouge	a red dress
un garçon intelligent	an intelligent boy	une fille intelligente	an intelligent girl
Tip: Simply add a silent '-e' to form feminine singular adjectives			
Singular Adjectives with Common Exceptions			
Masculine Singular		Feminine Singular	
Natural			
nature <u>l</u>		nature <u>lle</u>	
Canadian			
canadi <u>e</u> n		canadi <u>enne</u>	
Destructive			
destruct <u>if</u>		destruct <u>ive</u>	
Happy			
heure <u>ux</u>		heure <u>use</u>	
Dear			
ch <u>e</u> r		ch <u>ère</u>	
Singular Adjectives with Irregular Forms			
Masculine Singular	Feminine Singular	Masculine Singular	Feminine Singular
blanc	blanche	bon	bonne
bleu	bleue	doux	douce
gris	grise	faux	fausse
violet	violette	frais	fraîche
noir	noire	sec	sèche

French Adjectives			
Plurals of Adjectives			
Masculine Singular		Masculine Plural	
le grand boulevard	the great boulevard	les <u>grands</u> boulevards	the great boulevards
le <u>chapeau</u> gris	the grey hat	les <u>chapeaux</u> gris	the grey hats
Tip: Simply add an 's' to form masculine plural adjectives, but words with an 's' at the end remains the same in plural form			
Plurals of Adjectives			
Feminine Singular		Feminine Plural	
la grande empire	the great empire	les grands empires	the great empires
la leçon intéressante	the interesting lesson	les leçons intéressantes	the interesting lessons
Plurals of Adjectives with Common Exceptions			
Masculine Singular		Masculine Plural	
He is old		They are old	
Il est vieux		Ils sont vieux	
The beautiful wedding		The beautiful weddings	
le beau mariage		les beaux mariages	
Tip: Simply add an 'x' to form masculine plural adjectives with an '-eau' ending, but words with singular form ending in '-x' remains the same in plural form			

Adjectives or *les adjectifs* [l-ay][a-j-ek-teef] give a sentence **more description** about quality, color, shape, and size of a noun. They will have four forms. They must agree with the **gender** of the noun and whether it is **plural** or **singular**. The **article** show you how to make the adjective agree with these. The **default form** of every adjective in French is the **masculine** form, and from there we add letters to adjust the **ending** to make it **feminine** or **plural** or both.

Masculine (nothing added), Feminine –e, Masculine plural –s, Feminine plural –es.

Small, *petit* [p-uh-tee], Big, *grand* [g-ron] (rolled r)

Ugly, *laide* [l-ed], Sharp, *pointu* [pwa-n-too], Hot, *chaud* [sh-oh], Cold, *froid* [f-rr-wa].

If the adjective ends with the letter **-a**, **-e** or **-o**, then both the masculine and feminine forms are the same because we don't want to add another vowel.

Damp, *humide* , [hoo-mee-d], Masculine, *humide*
Feminine, *humide*, Masculine plural, *humides*
Feminine plural, *humides*

If the adjective ends with the letter **-s** or **-x** then the **masculine singular** and **masculine plural** forms are the same. These adjectives are somewhat **irregular**, especially those ending in **-x** so pay close attention.

Delicious, **Delicieux** [day-lee-s-yuh]

M: **delicieux**, F: **delicieuse***, MP: **delicieux**,
FP: **delicieuses**

**Notice how the -x has been removed and replaced by -se to make the feminine form. This is because 'delicieuxse' would not make much sense and would be a mouthful to try and say. We make it an adverb ending in -s and then add the appropriate feminine ending for both singular and plural feminine forms.*

Surprised, **surpris**, [s-oo-r-pree]

M: **Surpris**, F: **Surprise**, MP: **surprise**, FP: **surprises**

Notice in this example how the masculine singular and plural forms are exactly the same.

Agreement in Passé Composé

In the same way that you just learned with adjectives, when we are **conjugating verbs** in *Passé Composé* the verb has an ending that **matches the subject** we are talking about. If the subject is female or if the subject is plural (like **ils**) then we must make the verb plural or feminine as well. The important thing to remember here though is that **we only do this for verbs who use être as their auxiliary**.

Conjugate the verb into its *Passé Composé* form using the subject, the auxiliary and the verb to form a sentence: *Adele climbed*.

Adele = **Elle**

Climbed = **Monter** = **Monté**

The verb **Monter** uses the present tense form of **être** as its **auxiliary** and it requires **gender** and **singular/plural** agreement in the verb. Because of this, we will use *elle* as the *subject*, *est* as the *auxiliary* and we will add an ‘e’ to the end of the *past*

participle of the verb **monter**. The Answer is;
Elle est montée.

Future Tense Conjugation

In **future-tense**, there are endings that are added just like other conjugations, but with a few irregular cases.

-ER and -IR Verbs:

Aimer, to like = **Aimer**

Choisir, to choose = **Choisir**

*Notice that with **the regular verbs** in this tense, there is no change to the verb, we will simply add the ending onto this form of the verb. This form of the verb is called The Infinitif or l'infinitif [l-an-fee-nee-tee-f].*

-RE Verbs: For verbs that end in an **-re**, we will remove the last *e* from the **infinitif** form and then we are all set.

Rendre , to return becomes *Rendr*

Vendre , to sell becomes *Vendr*

Irregular Verbs: In this case, we must simply memorize the root that we will use to **conjugate** the verb to **future-tense**.

Irregular Stems:

Être, to be = **Ser-**

Avoir, to have = **Aur-**

Aller, to go = **Ir-**

Courir, to run = **Courr-**

Envoyer, to send = **Enverr-**

Faire, to do, = **Fer-**

Pouvoir, to be able to = **Pourr-**

Savoir, to know = **Saur-**

Venir, to come = **Viendr-**

note: this is the same for the similar verbs **devenir**, to become, **tenir**, to hold and **obtenir**, to obtain)

Voir, to see = **Verr**

Vouloir, to want = **Voudr-**

Changing Stems: Some verbs have changing stems, meaning that the words stay mostly the same except for a change or two. See examples of this below;

Appeler, to call = **Appeller** (with an extra **l**)

Essayer, to try = **Essaier**

Jeter, to dispose of = **Jetter** (with an extra **t**)

Lever, to lift, to stand = **Lèver**

Acheter, to buy = **Achèter**

*Notice that in these last two examples, an **accent** was added to the second-to-last **e** and everything else stays the same.*

The stem always ends with the letter **r**, in all of these cases and all others in the future tense. Therefore, we change the verbs that have endings other than the letter **r** like **être** and **avoir** to become **ser** and **aur**.

Endings Added in Future Tense

Je/ J' –**ai**, Tu –**as**, Il –**a**, Elle –**a**, On –**a**, Nous –**ons**
Vous –**ez**, Ils –**ont**, Elles –**ont**

Notice that the endings we add in the future tense are actually the entire verb *avoir* conjugated to future tense. This is the same form that we use as an auxiliary in the *passé composé* form of conjugation, but here we are not using it as an **auxiliary**, we are using it as the ending that we will put onto the **stem**.

Etre: Je **Serai**, Tu **Seras**, Il/Elle/On **Sera**, Nous **Serons**, Vous **Serez**, Ils/Elles **Seront**

Avoir: J'**Aurai**, Tu **Auras**, Il/Elle/On **Aura**, Nous **Aurons**, Vous **Aurez**, Ils/Elles **Auront**

Adverbs

French	English	Type of adverb
maintenant	now	adverb of time
hier	yesterday	
enfin	finally	
ici	here	adverb of place
partout	everywhere	
là-bas	over there	
bien	well	adverb of manner
mal	poorly	
lentement	slowly	
jamais	never	adverb of frequency
toujours	always	
souvent	often	
beaucoup	a lot	adverb of quantity
peu	not much	
assez	enough, quite	
comment	how	interrogative adverb
pourquoi	why	
combien	how much	

Adverbs **describe** the words, like adjectives. They can **modify** a **verb**, an **adjective** and even **themselves**. Depending on the type of modification they have different categories.

Frequency Modifications: They make a modification in **frequency**.

Ever, *jamais* [j-ah-may], Rarely, *rarement* [r-are-mon], Often, *souvent* [soo-von-t], Always, *toujours* [too-joo-r], Sometimes, *parfois* [par-f-wah]

Manner Modifications: They make a modification in the way something is done.

Politely, *poliment* [poh-lee-mon], Quickly, *vite* [vee-t], Well, *bien* [bee-yeh], Poorly, *mal* [mah-l]

Location Modifications: They make a modification in the **place** which something occurs.

Outside, *dehors* [day-or], Here, *ici* [ee-see], There, *là* [lah], Somewhere, *quelque part* [kel-kuh][par]

Modifications of Amount: They makes a modification in the **amount** of something.

Enough, *Assez* [ass-ay], A lot, *beaucoup* [boh-koo], little, *peu* [p-uhh], Very, *très* [t-ray], Too Much, *trop* [t-r-oh]

Time Amount Modifications: They makes a modification in the **time** something **takes**, will **take** or has **taken**.

Soon, *bientot* [b-yen-toh], Already, *deja* [day-j-ah], Now, *maintenant* [man-tuh-nah], A Long Time, *longtemps* [lon-g-tom-p], Yesterday, *hier* [y-air], Today, *aujourd'hui* [oh-j-oor-d-we]

Questioning Modifications: They makes a modification in terms of making something a **question**.

How much, *combien* [k-om-b-yen], Why, *pourquoi* [poor-k-wah], When, *quand* [k-on], How, *comment* [k-om-on], Like, *comme* [k-umm]

Negative Modifications: They change something into the **negative sense**, or without instead of with.

Never *ne... jamais* [nuh][j-am-ay], Not *ne...pas* [nuh][pah], Only *seulement* [s-uh-l-mon], Not any more *ne... plus* [nuh][p-loo]

Comparison Modifications: They compares two things.

Less, *moins* [m-wah-n], More, *plus* [p-loo], As well/Also, *aussi* [oh-see]

Superlative Modifications: They speaks to the **extremes** of something.

The most, *le plus* [luh][p-loo], The least, *le moins* [luh][m-wah-n], The best, *le meilleur* [luh][may-yur]

She descended sometimes is in *passé composé* and we need; *Subject + auxiliary + verb + adverb.*
Subject: **Elle**, Verb: **Descendre** which becomes Past

participle: **Descendu**. Using the **present tense** of *être* for the auxiliary **est**,

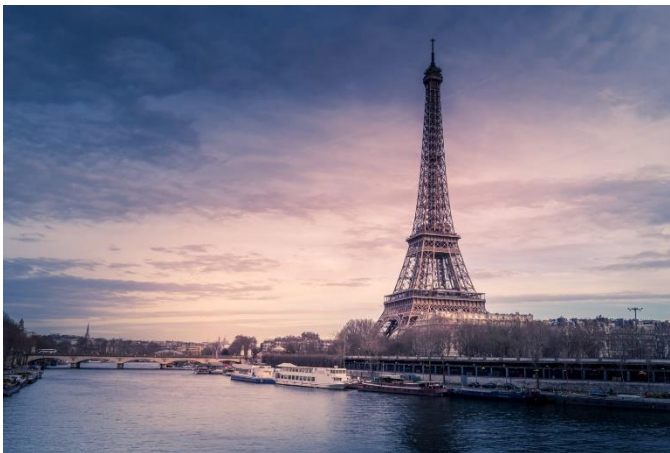
Elle est descendue parfois.

[el] [ay] [day-s-on-doo] [par-f-wah]

The boys walked quickly.

Subject: **Ils**, Verb: **Marcher** which becomes

Past participle: **Marché**. Using the present tense of the *avoir* for the **auxiliary ont**: Ils ont marché vite.



PREPOSITIONS

À = at/to	De = of, from
À côté de = next to	Derrière = behind
Après = after	Devant = in front of
Autour de = around	En face de = facing
Avant = before	Envers = toward
Avec = with	Loin de = far from
Dans = in	Pour = for, in order to
Sans = without	Près de = near
Sous = under	Au dessous = below
Sur = on	Au dessus = above

These are positioned **after a noun, a verb or an adjective** in a sentence, **to describe the relationship of two things**. In English these are words like **to, of, beside, behind**, and so on. Below are the most common prepositions that you will use.

À [ah], *to, at, in*, **Après** [ah-pray], *after*, **Avec** [ah-veh-k], *with*, **Dans** [d-ohn], *in*, **Avant** [ah-von], *before*, **De** [duh], *from, of, about*, **Derrière** [dare-y-air] *behind*, **Entre** [on-t-ruh] *between*, **Par** [pah-r],

by, through, Pendant [pon-d-on], *as, while, during,*
Pour [poo-r], *for, Sans* [s-on], *without, Sous* [s-oo]
under, Sur [s-oo-ruh] *on, on top of, Vers* [v-air]
toward, near.

Ils ont marché vite. (The boys walked quickly.)

We can add a preposition onto this sentence in order to relate it to a noun. *pendant* which means *during* .

Ils ont marché vite **pendant**. (The boys walked quickly **during**).

Now, we need a noun to make a full description.
Using the noun *la tempête* [tom-peh-te] which means
the storm we have;

Ils ont marché vite pendant la tempête.
[eel][oh-nt][mah-r-sh-ay][v-ee-t][[pon-d-on][lah][tom-peh-te]
The boys walked quickly **during storm**.

So then: **Subject +auxiliary +past-tense verb +adverb
+article +noun**

Conjunctions



A conjunction connect **grammatically related** words or phrases. **Coordinating conjunction** connect grammatically equal words or phrases then changing the order does not change the meaning. **Subordinating conjunction** connect not equal and depending ones. Common **coordinating conjunctions** are:

Et [eh] ,*and*, **Ou** [ooh] *or*, **Mais** [may], *but*, **Donc** [don-k], *so*, **Car** [ca-r], *for, because, since*, **Puis** [p-wee], *then*

Elle est jeune et belle.
*She is young **and** pretty*

Subordinating conjunction connects the main part with the dependent part. The **main part** has a subject, a verb and a noun. The second, **dependent part** starts with a **conjunction**.

Lorsque [lor-s-k-uh], *when*, **Quand** [k-on-d] *when*
Pourquoi [poo-r-k-wah], *why*, **Puisque** [p-wee-s-k-uh], *since, as*, **Que** [k-uh] *that*, **Si** [see] *if*.

Considerer: J'espere **que** tu vas mieux.
I hope that you are feeling better

The main phrase is **J'espère**, *I hope*, the dependent phrase is **que tu vas mieux**, *that you are feeling better* and the conjunction is **Que**, *that*.

DETERMINERS

Indéfini	un, une, des, tout, aucun, chaque, quelques, plusieurs
Défini	le, la, l', les
Contracté	au, aux, du des (de les)
Démonstratif	Ce, cet, cette, ces
Possessif	mon, ma, mes, ton, ta, tes, son, sa, ses, notre, votre, leur, nos, vos, leurs
Interrogatif	quel, quels, quelle, quelles (<i>selon le type de phrase</i>)
Exclamatif	quel, quels, quelle, quelles (<i>selon le type de phrase</i>)
Numéral	un, deux, trois, quatre, ...

Determiners **introduce and modify the nouns** we use them in order to create a more descriptive sentence. They are included **articles, numbers** and some **adjectives**. They are **always before** nouns in a sentence. Determiners must agree with the **gender** and the **quantity** (singular or plural) of the noun.

Articles are a type of determiner, as they can describe the quantity and the level of specificity with which you are speaking.

La chaise [lah][sh-eh-z], *the chair*. (A specific chair.)

Une voiture [oo-n][v-wah-too-r], *a car*. (Car in a general)

Du fromage [doo][f-roh-mah-j], *some cheese*. (part/portion of something.)

A **number** that describes **quantity** is also a type of determinant. These numbers describe a noun by **denoting the number of units**: **Six** enfants [see-s][on-f-on-t-s], *six children*.

Adjectives that are **not descriptive** ones are also determinants: **Ce** livre [suh][lee-v-ruh], *this book*. (One specific book.). **Quel** chat? [k-el][sh-ah], *which cat?* (One specific cat.)

Adverb position in a Sentence

Adverbs have different location in a sentence, based on whether you are changing a **verb** or not. So far we were modifying verbs and the **adverb** is placed after the verb. Otherwise the **adverbs** come **before** the part of speech that you modify.

Je suis fatigué. I am tired.

We would add the adverb right before the word **fatigue**: *Je suis **très** fatigué.* I am very tired.



Basic conversations and short stories

French Greetings

good morning	bonjour	bohn-zhoor
good evening	bonsoir	bohn-swar
good night	bonne nuit	bonn-nwee
goodbye	au revoir	ohr-vwah
hi / bye	salut	sah-loo
thank you	merci	mayr-see
thank you very much	merci beaucoup	mayr-see boh-coo
please (familiar)	s'il-te-plaît	seel-t-play
please (formal)	s'il-vous-plaît	seel-voo-play
pleasure to meet you	enchanté(e)	ahn-shantay
how are you? (familiar)	comment vas-tu?	Koh-mmahn vah-too
how are you? (formal)	comment allez-vous?	koh-mmahn-t-ahllay-voo
and you? (familiar)	et toi?	eh toa
and you? (formal)	et vous?	eh voo
how are things?	comment ça va?	Koh-mmahn sah-vah
well, thank you	bien, merci	bee-anh mair-see
very well	très bien	tray bee-anh
not very good	pas très bien	pah tray bianh
not too bad	pas trop mal	pah trow mahl
see you soon	à bientôt	ah biahn-toh
see you tomorrow	à demain	ah damahn
good day	bonne journée	bonn-zhoomayh

Feel free to share and Frenchify your life with eFrenchCafe.com

Pomme ou banana ou ananas ?
[p-uh-m][oo][bah-nah-n][oo][ah-nah-nah]
apple or banana or pineapple
Yes, **Oui** [wee]
Yes, **Si** [see] (more informal)
Maybe, **Peut-Etre** [puh-t-eh-t-ruh]

ÂGE Age

Je suis né le trois octobre 1985.

I was born on October 3rd,
1985.

1985= mille neuf cent quatre-vingt cinq

J'ai douze ans = I have twelve years.

I am seventeen years old= **J'ai dix-sept ans**

My dad is fifty years old = **Ma pere à Cinquante ans**

They are sixteen years old = **Ils ont seize ans**

The baby is one week old, = **La bébé à une semaine**

Money

Dollars [doll-air], Dollars, **Sous** [s-oo], Cents

Six Dollars et Quatre-Vingt Dix Sous,

Six Dollars and Ninety Cents

Time

Seconde [seh-k-on-d], second, **Heure** [euh-ruh], hour

Minute [mee-n-oo-t], minute, **Jour**[j-oo-r], day
Semaine [suh-m-en], week, **Mois** [m-wah], month
Anée [ah-nay], year
Dizaine d'années [dee-z-en][d-ah-nay],
 ten years/ tens of years
Une vingtaine d'années [van-ten][d-ah-nay],
 twenty years
L'Heure [l-euh-ruh], The time
C'est quoi l'heure?,
 what's the time?
Quelle heure a-t-il?,
 What time is it?
A Quelle heure est-ce-qu'on quitte?,
 What time are we leaving at?
A Quelle heure êtes vous nés?,
 What time were you born at?
L'École commence a quelle heure?,
 What time does school start at?

Addresses

Rue [roo], Street, **Route** [roo-t], Road
Chemin [sh-uh-m-an], Trail, Path
Allee [ah-lay], Driveway, **Ruelle** [roo-el], Alley
Terrain de stationnement
 [tuh-rr-an] [duh][st-ah-si-on-mon-t],
 Parking lot

When we write addresses, we write them in this order;
number + street type (road, crescent etc.) + street name

9 Rue Ste. Catherine, 9 St. Catherine Street

Saint = St/Ste.

Use: **À** befor a city or town, **Au** befor a province and **en**
befor a country names.

*Je suis allé **en France***

I went to France.

*Je suis allé **à Paris***

I going to Paris,

Marriage: le mariage, Se marier avec

To get married to, To marry someone

Enceinte [on-san-tuh], Pregnant

Friends: **Ami** [ah-mee], male friend, **Groupe**, Group
Amie [ah-mee], female friend, **Club** [k-loo-b], Club
Equipe [ay-keep], Team

Sports and Games: **Jeu** [j-uh], Game, *Les Sports* [lay][spo-r], Sports, **Soccer**, **Le foot**, Soccer, **Football Américain**, Football, **Le basket**, Basketball, **Le gazon** [luh][gah-z-on], Grass, **Un Ballon**, a ball **Frisbee**, Frisbee, **Courir**, To Run, *Terrain de jeu* [t-air-an][duh][j-uh], Field

Emotions and Feelings: **Triste** [t-rree-s-t] , Sad,
Heureux [her-uh] , Happy for a male, **Heureuse** [her-uh-suh], happy for a female, **Fâchée** [fah-sh-ay], angry
Excite [ex-see-tay], excited.

Bonjour [bon-j-oor], *Hello, hi*
Oui [wee], *yes* **Non** [noh], *no*
S'il vous plaît [seel][v-oo][play], *please.*
S'il te plaît [seel][t-uh][play], *please.*
Je suis [j-uh][s-wee], *I am.*
Tu es [too][ay], *you are.*
Vous êtes [voo-s][eh-tt-s], *you are.*
Je m'appelle [j-uh][m-ah-p-el], *I am called. / My name is.*

Enchanté [on-sh-on-tay], *Nice to meet you.*

Pardon ? [pa-rr-doh-n] , *Pardon?, Sorry?*

Comment t'appelles-tu ? *What is your name?*

[coh-mon][t-app-el][t-oo]

comment vous appelez-vous?

[coh-mon][v-oo-z][app-el-ay][v-oo-z]

Comment allez-vous? *How are you?*

[coh-mon][ah-lay][v-oo-z],

Ça va? [sah][vah] *how are ya? / what's up?*

Excusez-moi [ex-k-you-z-ay][m-wah], *excuse me.*

Je ne comprends pas

[j-uh][nuh][k-om-p-ron-d][pah],

I don't understand.

Comment dit-on ... en français?

Comment dit-on **banana** en français?

[coh-mon][dee-t][ohn]banana[oh-n][f-ron-say],

how do you say banana in French.

à toute à l'heure. See you later

[ah][too-t][ah][l-err].

à toute à mardi! [ah][mah-r-dee].

See you Tuesday

Est-ce que vous pouvez m'aider ?

[ess-kuh][voo][poo-vay][m-eh-day]

Can you help me?"

Je ne sais pas [j-uh][nuh][say][pah]

I don't know.

Qu'est-ce que c'est ? What is it?

[k-ess] [kuh]say]

Qu'est-ce que c'est ca ? what is that?"

Qu'est-ce que c'est **l'hiver**?

l'hiver means winter.

Répétez, s'il vous plait.

Répète s'il vous plaît,

Can you repeat that please?

Plus lentement. slower

[p-loo][lon-tuh-mon-t],

Encore Une fois. one more time.

[on-k-or][oo-n][f-wah],

Asking address

Excusez-moi, **où est** La Tour Eiffel ?

[ex-k-you-z-ay][m-wah],[ueh] [lah][too-r][ee-fell],

Excuse me where is the Eiffel Tower?

Gauche [g-oh-sh], *Right*

Droite [drr-wah-tuh] , *Left*

C'est [s-eh], *It is/ It's*

C'est à gauche, *It's to the left*

C'est à droite, *It's to the right*

C'est à côté de *It's beside (something)*

[s-eh][ah][k-oh-tay][duh],

C'est près de *It's close to (something)*

[s-eh][pr-eh][duh],

C'est près d'ici *It's close to here*

[s-eh][pr-eh][d-ee-see],

C'est loin de *It's far from (something)*

[s-eh][l-w-ah-n][duh],

C'est loin d'ici *It's far from here*

[s-eh][l-w-ah-n][d-ee-see],

Get on the metro, the train or a bus and buy a ticket,

Billet Ticket,

[bee-yay],

Un billet, s'il vous plaît

Un billet à Paris s'il vous plaît

[uhn][bee-yay][ah][pah-ree][seel][v-oo][p-l-eh].

Restaurant Phrases

Asseyez-vous mêmes. Seat

yourselves.

[ah-say-yay][voo][m-eh-m]

La carte, s'il vous plaît. the menu

please.

[lah][k-ar-t][seel][voo][p-l-ay],

s'il vous plaît please.

Le sel [luh][s-el], The salt

Le poivre The pepper

[luh][p-wah-v-ruh],

Des serviettes Napkins

[day][s-air-vee-et-s],

De l'eau Some water

[duh][l-oh],

Du café Some coffee

[doo][kah-fay],

Du Thé Some tea

[doo][tay],

Le ketchup The Ketchup

[luh]ketchup],

Le sauce piquante. *The hot sauce*

[luh][soh-s][pee-k-ont],

L'addition, s'il vous plait. *Bill /check please.*

[lah-dee-see-

on]

Merci

[meh-r-see], *Thank you*

Merci beaucoup [meh-r-see][b-oh-k-oo],

Thanks a lot, thank you so much

Merci bien [meh-r-see][bee-yen],

Thank you very much

Merci Madame [meh-r-see][mah-dah-m],

Thank you ma'am

Merci Monsieur [meh-r-see][moh-see-uh-r],

Thank you Sir

Merci Beaucoup Madame

[meh-r-see][b-oh-k-oo][mah-dah-m],

Thank you so much ma'am.

Les Textos: In French, when you are texting it is called; ***un texto*** [t-ex-toh]. There are some short-forms you can use when texting in French.

Bjr, Bonjour, *hi, hello*, **biz**, bisous, *kisses*

Bsr, bonsoir, *good evening, good night*

ça va, ça va? *Are you good? Or how are you?*

Ca va. *I'm good or it's going well.*

b1, bien, *good*, **dsl**, je suis désolé, *I'm sorry*

é twa, et toi, *and you?, how are you?*

a tt, à toute à l'heure, *see you soon, see you later*

a +, à plus, *see you later*

stp, s'il te plaît, *please (informally)*

svp, s'il vous plaît, *please (formally)*

Phone Conversation Phrases

Un télé phone fixe ,

landline

Un télé phone mobile, un portable ,

a cell phone

Une boî te vocale ,

voicemail, voice-mailbox

Allumer, Allumer le telephone,

to turn on the telephone

Allumer ma telephone,

to turn on MY phone

Brancher , to plug in.

Recharger, to recharge

Je vais brancher ma telephone ,

I will plug in my phone

Je vais *Recharger* ma telephone ,

I will charge my phone

Une touche, a key,

Appuyer , to press

Appuyer la touche, press the key/ the button

La touche die sè, the hashtag key

Appuyer la touche die sè, press the hashtag key

Appeler quelqu'un, to call someone

Je vais appeler Marie, I will call Marie

Télé phoner à quelqu'un,

to telephone someone

Je vais téléphoner à Jean, I will call Jean
Passer un coup de fil , To make a phone call
Passer un coup de télé phone,
 to make a telephone call
Un appel télé phonique , A phone call
Un coup de fil is a less formal.
Un appel te ´le ´phonique is formal.
Je vais faire un appel téléphonique
 I'm going to make a phone call. (in an office)
Décrocher le telephone.
Decrocher, to pick up (the telephone)
Composer un numéro
 [k-om-poh-say][uhn][noo-meh-row],
 to dial a number.
ça sonne [sa][soh-nuh], it's ringing
ça sonne occupé
 [sa][soh-nuh][ok-you-pay]
 it's ringing the busy tone.
Occupé, occupied/ busy.
Personne ne répond
 [p-air-soh-n][nuh][r-eh-poh-nd],
 nobody is answering.
Pierre répond , Pierre answers

Pierre a répondu , Pierre answered
Pierre décroche , Pierre picks up the phone
Pierre a décroché, Pierre picked up the phone
Allo [ah-loh], hello

C'est de la part de qui ?,

Who is calling?

Qui est à l'appareil ?

Who is on the phone?

Est-ce que je peux parler à...,

may I speak to...

Bonjour, **c'est Jean**, un ami de Pierre. **Pourrais-je lui parler** s'il vous plaît?

Hi, this is Jean, a friend of Peter. May I speak to him please?

Bonjour, **c'est Jean**. **Pourrais-je parler avec Pierre** s'il vous plaît?

Hi, this is Jean,. May I speak to Pierre please?

Leave a message

Je peux lui laisser un message ?

May I leave a message for him or her?

Je vous la passe. *I'll put her on*

Je vous le passe. *I'll put him on*

Ne quittez pas. *don't hang up*

Un instant s'il vous plaît.

One moment please

Est-ce qu'il peut me rappeler?

Can he call me back?

Est-ce que vous pouvez lui demander de me rappeler?

Can you ask him to call me back?

Je rappellerai plus tard.

I will call back later.

Problems on the phone

On a été coupés ,

we got cut off / we got disconnected

Vous avez le mauvais numéro,

You have a wrong number

Il n'y a pas de réseau ,

there is no reception / there is no service

Je n'ai plus de batterie,

I have no more battery / my battery is dead

Je t'entends mal .

I hear you bad / I cannot hear you.

La connexion est mauvaise ”

the connection is bad.

Je n'ai pas entendu la sonnerie.

I did not hear your ringer.

Je suis désolé, je n'ai pas entendu la sonnerie .

I am sorry, I didn't hear the phone / ring.

Est-ce que tu as entendu la sonnerie ?

Did you heard phone ring

as tu reçu mon message?

Did you receive my message?

Je partirai demain. Je suis en France depuis huit ans. Je suis né dans ce pays et, pourtant, j'y ai vécu en exil. Ces huit années-la ont été longues, très longue, car je n'ai jamais cessé d'attendre le jour ou je bouclerais ma valise pour revenir a Bactriang.

I will leave tomorrow. I have been in france for 8 years. I was born in this country and yet I have lived here in exile. These past eight years have been long, very long, because I have never ceased to await the day that I would boucle my suitcase and return to Bactriang.

Ce matin, je me suis regardé dans la glace du lavabo. J'ai vieilli. Le poil, la peau, le regard. Surtout

le regard, et je me demande si, là-bas, Ils me reconnaîtront. Je me demande aussi si cela vaut vraiment la peine de reprendre la route. Il y a tellement de chose qui ont changé en huit ans, a commencer par moi. Malgré tout, il faut que je règle cette vieille histoire, ne serait-ce que pour apprendre a De Soto qu'il n'a pas gagné la partie.

This morning, I looked at myself in the mirror of the bathroom sink. I have aged. The hair, the skin, the gaze. Above all the gaze and I asked myself if, over there, they will recognize me. I asked myself as well if it was worth the effort to go back on the road. There are so many things which have changed in eight years, starting with me. In spite of everything, I'll have to sort out this old situation, if only to teach De Soto who's the boss.

Victor Hugo

Demain, dès l'aube

Demain, dès l'aube, à l'heure où blanchit la
campagne,
Je partirai. Vois-tu, je sais que tu m'attends.
J'irai par la forêt, j'irai par la montagne.

Je ne puis demeurer loin de toi plus longtemps.
Je marcherai les yeux fixés sur mes pensées,
Sans rien voir au dehors, sans entendre aucun bruit,
Seul, inconnu, le dos courbé, les mains croisées,
Triste, et le jour pour moi sera comme la nuit.
Je ne regarderai ni l'or du soir qui tombe,
Ni les voiles au loin descendant vers Harfleur,
Et quand j'arriverai, je mettrai sur ta tombe
Un bouquet de houx vert et de bruyère en fleur.

Tomorrow, at dawn

*Tomorrow, at dawn, at the hour when the
countryside whitens,
I will depart. You see, I know you wait for me.
I will go through the forest and over the mountains.
I cannot stay far from you any longer.
I will trudge on, my eyes fixed on my thoughts,
Ignoring everything around me, without hearing a
sound,
Alone, unknown, back stooped, hands crossed,
Saddened, and the day will be like night for me.
I will neither see the golden glow of the falling
evening,
Nor the sails going down to Harfleur in the*

*distance,
And when I arrive, I will place on your tomb
A bouquet of green holly and flowering heather.*

GERMAN

Deutsch, official language of both Germany and Austria and one of the official languages of Switzerland. **German** belongs to the West Germanic group of the Indo-European language family, along with English, Frisian, and Dutch (Netherlandic, Flemish). However it has contact with the Romans, in the 1st century BC it is about the 6th century CE you can find German language like most of its ueropian relatives. German is an inflected language with *four cases* for **nouns**, **pronouns**, and **adjectives** (nominative, accusative, genitive, dative), **three genders** (masculine, feminine, neuter), and **strong** and **weak** verbs.

German is spoken natively by a population of about 515 million people. **German** is the second most widely spoken **Germanic** language after English. In Europe, where it is the third most taught foreign language after English and French, and in the United States. **German** has also been influential the fields of science and technology, where it is the second most commonly used scientific language and the third most widely used language on websites after English and Russian.

SOUNDS UND ALPHABET

SOUNDS AND ALPHABET

DEUTSCHES ALPHABET

GERMAN ALPHABET



A ah	B bay	C tsay	D day	E ay	F eff
G gay	H ha	I eee	J yacht	K car	L ell
M em	N en	O oh	P pay	Q coo	R air
S ess	T tay	U ooh	V fow	W vay	X ix
Y oopsilon	Z tsett	Ä	Ö	Ü	ß esssett

Or in IPA phonetics

A 1.1

das Alphabet

www.germanteacherluzi.com

Your
German
Teacher

A B C D E F G

[a:] [be:] [t͡ʃe:] [de:] [e:] [ɛf] [ge:]

H I J K L M N

[ha:] [i:] [jɔt] [ka:] [ɛl] [ɛm] [ɛn]

O P Q R S T U

[o:] [pe:] [ku:] [ɛʁ] [ɛs] [te:] [u:]

V W X Y Z

[faʊ] [ve:] [iks] [ˈʏpsɪlɔn] [t͡ʃɛt]

Ä Ö Ü ß

[ɛ:] [ø:] [y:] [ɛs t͡ʃɛt]

NOTE: The h or y is the same and sound like eə in English.

The German alphabet is very similar to that of English but it has four letters that English does not have: **ä, ö, ü** and **ß**.

a	like a in <i>father</i>
ä	like e in <i>get</i>
au	like ow in <i>how</i>
äu, eu	like oy in <i>toy</i>
b	like b at the beginning of a word like p at the end of a word
ch	pronounced at the back of the throat, like ch in the Scottish word <i>loch</i>
d	like d in <i>dog</i> at the beginning of a word like t in <i>tin</i> at the end of a word
ei	like y in <i>by</i> , or i in <i>pile</i>
g	always a soft g as in <i>get</i>
i	like i in <i>hit</i> , or ee in <i>see</i>
ie	like ee in <i>see</i>
j	like y in <i>yes</i>
k	like <i>car</i> , but without the r sound

<i>l</i>	like in English, but pronounced more at the teeth and not in the back of the mouth
<i>ö</i>	like <i>ur</i> in <i>burn</i>
<i>p</i>	like in English, but with a bit more air
<i>qu</i>	like <i>kv</i>
<i>r</i>	rolled at the back of the throat
<i>s</i>	like <i>s</i> in <i>see</i> , <i>sh</i> in <i>ship</i> , or <i>z</i> in <i>zoo</i>
<i>sch</i>	like <i>sh</i> in <i>shop</i>
<i>ß</i>	like <i>ss</i> in <i>grass</i>
<i>u</i>	like <i>oo</i> in <i>boot</i>
<i>ü</i>	like <i>ew</i> in <i>dew</i>
<i>v</i>	like <i>f</i> in <i>foot</i>
<i>w</i>	like <i>v</i> in <i>van</i>
<i>z</i>	like <i>ts</i> in <i>pets</i>

Note: **sch** and **ch** are specific german consonants other are sound like English. German is a much more phonetically consistent language than English. This means that German words almost always sound the way they are spelled with consistent sounds for any given spelling. If your keyboard does not have **ä**, **ö**, **ü** and **ß**, you can use **ae**, **oe**, **ue** and **ss** instead, respectively.

DAS ALPHABET

A Apfel 

K Koffer 

U Uhr 

B Bett 

L Lampe 

V Vogel 

C Computer 


M Musik 

W Wasser 

D Daumen 

N Nase 

X Taxi 

E Ente 

O Ohr 

Y Pyramide 

F Fahrrad 

P Park 

Z Zahn 

G Geld 

Q Quad 

Ä Käse 

H Hund 

R Regen 

Ö Schildkröte 

I Information 

S Sonne 

Ü übersetzen 

J Junge 

T Tisch 

ß Straße 

Diphthongs: combined vowel sounds

AA / long "ah"/

Haar /hahr/ *hair*, **Paar** /pahrr/ *pair, couple*

Ai / **ei** /eye/

bei (at, near), das **Ei** (egg), der **Mai** (May)

Au /ow/

Frau /frow/ *woman*, **blau** /blow/ *blue*, **auch** (also),
das **Auge** (eye), **aus** (out of)

EI

Frei /fry/ *free*, **Neine** /nine/ *no*

Eu / **äu** /oy/

Fräulein /froy-line/ *young woman*, **bräunen** /broy-nen/ *tan*, **Freude** /froy-deh/ *joy*, **scheu** /shoy/ *shy*,
Häuser (houses), **Europa** (Europe), **neu** (new).

EE /long "ee/ay"/

Tee /tay/ *tea*, **Schnee** /shnay/ *snow*,

Ie /eeh/

Sieben /zee-ben/ *seven*, **zieh** /tsee/ *pull*, **Bieten** (offer), **nie** (never), **Sie** (you).

Auf Wiedersehen *good-bye*, **Bauen** *build*, **Beere** *berry*, **Brauchen** *need*, **Das ist scheußlich.** *That is dreadful*, **Gute Musik** *good music*, **Guten Tag!** *Hello. Good day*, **Ich auch** *me too*, **Im Frühling** *in the spring*, **Käfig** *cage*, **Neue Sportler** *new athletes*, **Schönheit** *beauty*, **Süßigkeiten** *sweets*, **Tschau!** *So long!*, **Verkaufen** *sell*.

Schloss, Kissen, muss, essen

palace, pillow, must, eat,

heißen, Fuß, aßen, reißen

be called, foot, ate, rip,

schießen, Kuss, groß, lassen

shoot, kiss, big, let,

wissen, biss, außer, fließen

know, bit, except, flow

The letter **ß** is used in place of a double "ss" when it follows a long vowel sound. A double "ss" is written when it follows a short vowel sound. Compare the following pairs of words, written in **Fraktur** and **modern German** printing.

Amerika	Amerika	America
Deutschland	Deutschland	Germany
Volkswagen	Volkswagen	Volkswagen
Kindergarten	Kindergarten	kindergarten, nursery school

Grouped consonants

Ck /k/ :dick (fat, thick), der Schock (shock)

Ch : After **a**, **o**, **u** and **au**, pronounced like the guttural **ch** in Scottish "loch" - das **Buch** (book), auch (also). Otherwise it is a palatal sound as in: **ach** /ahch/ *oh, alas*, **ich** /eech/ *I*, **nach** /nahch/ *after, to*, **stechen** /shtehch-en/ *sting*, **mich** (me), **welche** (which), **wirklich** (really).

***Note:** If no air is passing over your tongue when you say a **ch**-sound, you aren't saying it correctly. No true equivalent in English. - Although **ch** doesn't usually have a hard **k** sound, there are exceptions: **Chor**, **Christoph**, **Chaos**, **Orchester**, **Wachs** (wax)*

Pf: Both letters are (quickly) pronounced as a combined **puff**-sound: das **P**ferd (horse), der **P**fennig. If this is difficult for you, an **f** sound will work, but try to do it!

Ph /f/ das Alphabet, **phonetisch**

Note:** Some words formerly spelled with **ph** are now spelled with f: **das Telefon, das Foto

Qu /kv/

die **Qual** (anguish, torture), die **Quittung** (receipt)

Sch /sh/

Schule /shoo-leh/ *school*, **waschen** /wush-en/ *wash*,
schicken /shick-en/ *send*, **Tisch** *tish* *tableschön*
(pretty), die **Schule** (school)

***Note:** The German **sch** combination is **never split**, whereas **sh** usually is split: *Grashalme*, *Gras/Halme*; but die **Show**, a foreign word.*

***TSCH:** This combination of consonants is used primarily to stand for the sound ch in a few foreign words. One such word in German is **Tschechien** /cheh**ch**-ee-en/ *Czech Republic*.*

Sp / st /shp / sht/
sprechen (speak), **stehen** (stand)

***Note:** At the start of the word, the s in **sp/st** has a **sch** sound as in English **show** or **she**.*

Th /t/
Das Theater /tay-ahter/ **das Thema** /tay-muh/, topic
Note: "d" at the end of a German word usually has a hard "t" sound.

Consonants ***Bb, Cc, Dd, Ff***

Boot /bote/ *boat*, **bellen** /bell-en/ *bark*, **oben** /oh-ben/ *up there/above*, **Farbe** /far-beh/ *color*, **Korb** /corp/ *basket*, **Gib** /geep/ *give*, **Camping** /kem-ping/ *camping*, **charakter** /kah-rahk-tuh/ *character*, **Cassette/Kassette** /kah-set-the/ *cassette*, **Casino/Kasino** /kah-zee-no/ *casino*, **dumm** /doom/ *dumb*, **das** /duss/ *that*, **beide** /bye-deh/ *both*, **wieder** /vee-duh/ *again*, **Bad** /baht/ *bath*, **Hand** /hahnt/ *hand*, **faul** /fowl/ *lazy*, **Schaf** /shahf/ *sheep*.

Gg, Hh, Jj, Kk, Ll, Mm, Nn

Gegen /gay-gen/ *against*, **Bogen** /boh-gen/ *curve, bend*, **gehen** /gay-en/ *go*, **sehen** /zay-en/ *see*, **zieht** /tseet/ *pulls*, **jung** /young/ *young*, **jagen** /yah-gen/ *hunt*, **Klasse** /kluh-she/ *class*, **schicken** /shick-en/ *send*, **buk** /book/ *baked*, **liegen** /lee-gen/ *lie, recline*, **Keller** /kell-uh/ *cellar*, **will** /vill/ *want*, Mund moont *mouth*, **atmen** /aht-men/ *breathe*, **Schwimm** /shvim/ *swim*, **nein** /nine/ *no*, **rennen** /ren-nen/ *run*, **Braun** /brown/ *brown*.

Gut, gelb, Magen, Freitag.
Good, yellow, stomach, Friday.

Hut, heben, lehren, haben
hat, lift, teach, have

Jodler, Junge, Jahr, Jurist
yodeller, boy, year, lawyer

Klein, Wecker, Kissen, kurz
little, alarm clock, pillow, short

Mag, muss, warm, Sturm
like, must, warm, storm

Nett, Nase, Donner, Gewinn
nice, nose, thunder, gain/win

Park /park/ *park*, **Lippe** /lip-peh/ *lip*, **klapp** /klup/ *lift up, turn down*, **Qualität** /kvah-lee-tate/ *quality*,

quer /kvair/ *sideways*, **Reise** /rye-zeh/ *trip*, **sparen** /shpah-ren/ *save* **bruder** /broo-duh/ *brother*, **Schwester** /shves-tuh/ *sister* **singen** /zing-en/ *sing*, **leise** /lye-zeh/ *soft, quiet*, **Schloss** /shlawss/ *palace*, **tanken** /tunk-en/ *fill up with gas*, **raten** /rah-ten/ *advise*, **theorie** /tay-oh-ree/ *theory*, **viel** /feel/ *much*, **vor** /fore/ *before*, **Version** /vare-zee-one/ *version*, **Vase** /vah-zeh/ *vase*, **Wasser** /wuss-uh/ *water*, **Volkswagen** /folks-vah-gen/ *Beetle, people's car*, **wiegen** /vee-gen/ *weigh*, **wo** /voe/ *where*, **Sex** /zecks/ *sex*, **X-Beine** /icks-bye-neh/ *knock knees*, **X-Strahlen** /icks-shtrah-len/ *X-rays*, **Zeit** /tsyte/ *time*, **Zug** /tsook/ *train*, **Walzer** /vultz-uh/ *waltz*, **Platz** /plutz/ *place, space*.

Party, Preis, Tapete, Kupfer

party, prize, wallpaper, copper

Quark, qualifizieren, Quittung, Quorum

Curd cheese, qualify, receipt, quorum

Rollschuh, recht, fahren, Butter

roller skate, right, drive, butter

Suppe, sagen, messen, Besen

soup, say, measure, broom

Treu, Flirt, Flotte, Bart

loyal, flirtation, fleet, beard

Verkehrt, voll, vier, vulgar

wrong, full, four, vulgar

Warum, wer, Verwendung, anderswo

Why, who, use, elsewhere

Zu, Blitz, kratzen, Zeppelin

to, lightning, scratch, Zeppelin.

Vowels: they are similar to English vowels. *Aa, Ee, Ii, Oo, Uu, Yy, Ää, Öö, Üü*

Alt /ult/ *old*, **Frage** /frah-geh/ *question*, **tragen** /trah-gen/ *carry*, **fallen** /fuh-len/ *fall*, **stehlen** /shtay-len/ *steal*.

Essen /ess-en/ *eat*, **lesen** /laze-en/ *read*, **egal** /ay-gahl/ *no difference*, **besser** /bess-uh/ *better*, **Italien** /ee-tah-lee-en/ *Italy*, *isst* /isst/ *eats*, **wider** /wee-duh/ *against*, **Bild** /bilt/ *picture*.

Oder /oh-duh/ *or*, **soll** /zawl/ *should*, **Bohnen** /bone-en/ *beans*, **Monat** /mone-aht/ *month*, **stottern** /shtaw-tun/ *stutter*.

Tun /toon/ *do*, **Mutter** /moo-tuh/ *mother*, **Schuh** /shoo/ *shoe*, **Mund** /moont/ *mouth*.

Symbol /zuem-bole/ *symbol*, **Gymnasium** /guem-nah-zee-oom/ *preparatory school*, **Typ** /tuep/ *type*.

Älter /ell-tuh/ *older*, **Väter** /fay-tuh/ *fathers*, **Krähe** /kray-eh/ *crow*, **Mögen** /m(er)-gen/ *like*, **Schlösser** /shl(er)-suh/ *palaces*, **schön** /sh(er)n/ *nice, pretty*.
Über /ue-buh/ *over*, **Tür** /tue-uh/ *door*, **Flüsse** /fluess-eh/ *rivers*.

Im Januar *in January*, **Kaufen** *sell*, **Kleiner** *smaller*
Langsam *slow*, **Lernen** *learn*, **Mein Bruder** *my brother*, **Meine Frau** *my wife*, **Sagen** *say*, **Schön** *nice, pretty*, **Sehr bald** *very soon*, **Sommer** *summer*
Wann *when*, **Wo ist der Zug?** *Where is the train?*
Zu Hause *at home*.

Cognates: similar or common words.

Konstitution /kone-stee-too-tsee-one/ *constitution*,
Position /poe-zih-tsee-one/ *position*, **Qualifikation** /kvah-lee-fee-kah-tsee-one/ *qualification*, **Situation** /zih-too-ah-tsee-one/ *situation*, **biologisch** /bee-oh-loh-gish/ *biological*, **historisch** /hiss-tore-ish/ *historic*, **hysterisch** /hue-stare-ish/ *hysterical*, **logisch** /loh-gish/ *logical*, **romantisch** /roh-mahn-tish/ *romantic*, **Variation** /vah-ree-ah-tsee-one/ *variation*, **Artist** /ahr-tist/ *artist*, **Kapitalist** /kah-pee-tah-list/ *capitalist*, **Komponist** /kome-poh-nist/ *composer*, **Maschinist** /mah-shee-nist/ *machinist*, **Pianist** /pee-ah-nist/ *pianist*, **Qualität** /kvah-lee-tate/ *quality*, **Souveränität** /zoo-vair-aye-nee-tate/

sovereignty, **Spezialität** /shpeh-tsee-ah-lee-tate/
speciality, **Universität** /oo-nee-vair-zee-tate/ university.

Afrika und Europa Africa and Europe,

Apotheke apothecary, drugstore

Diktator dictator

Ein amerikanischer Tourist an American tourist

Ein Biergarten a beer garden

Ein deutscher Jurist a German lawyer

Ein Komputer a computer

Ein Tiergarten a zoo

Große Elefanten big elephants

Hamburg und München Hamburg and Munich

Hundert Euro hundred euros

In Berlin in Berlin

In der Schweiz in Switzerland

Klassische Sinfonie classical symphony

Mobiltelefon mobile (cell) phone

Präsident president

grundlegende Wörter und Sätze

Basic Words and Phrases

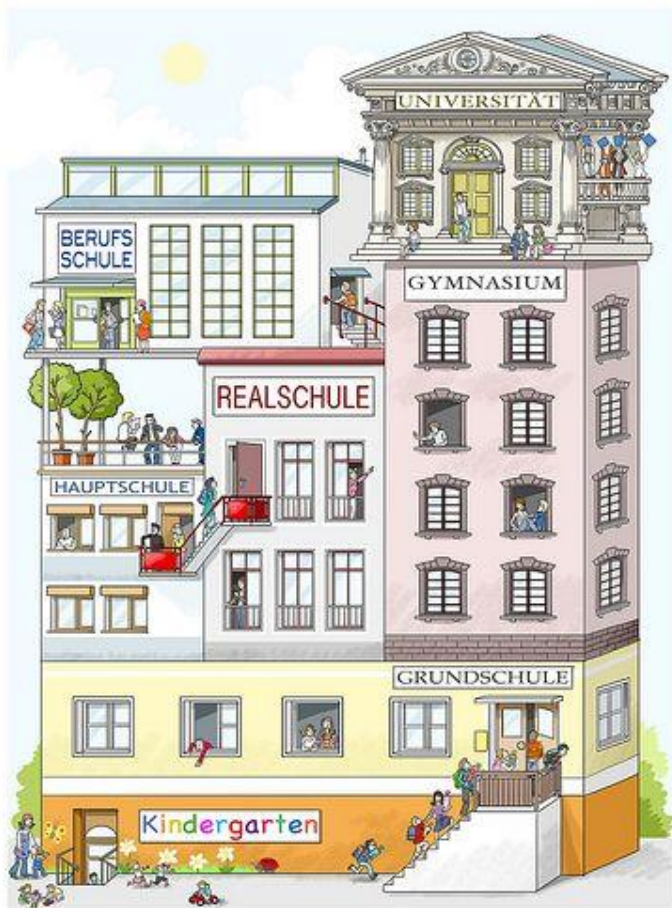
deutsch zahlen			
0	zero null	one eins	1
2	two zwei	three drei	3
4	four vier	five fünf	5
6	six sechs	seven sieben	7
8	eight acht	nine neun	9

Guten Tag! Hello!	Guten Morgen! Good morning!
Auf Wiedersehen! Goodbye!	Entschuldigung! Excuse me.
Wie geht es dir? How are you?	Danke. Thank you.
Ich liebe dich. I love you.	Bitte. Please.
Es tut mir leid! I'm sorry.	Schön dich zu treffen Nice to meet you.
Danke, mir geht es gut. Fine, thank you.	Vielen dank. Thank you very much.

Karte von Deutschland

Map of Germany





Deutsch	English	Deutsch	English
hallo	hello	aber	but
guten Morgen	good morning	oder	or
guten Tag	good day	danke	thanks
guten Abend	good evening	bitte	welcome
tschüs	bye bye	Wie bitte?	Pardon?
ja	yes	Tut mir leid!	Sorry!
nein	no	Viel Spaß!	Have fun!
ja, bitte	yes, please	Viel Glück!	Good luck!
nein, danke	no, thanks	Guten Appetit	Enjoy
und	and	Prost!	Cheers!

Auf Wiedersehen

Goodbye

Tschüss

Goodbye (informal)

Auf Wiederhören

Goodbye (on the telephone)

Bis später

See you later

Bis bald

See you soon

Bis morgen

See you tomorrow

Bis Freitag

See you on Friday

Alles Gute

All the best

languagelearningbase.com

Viel Glück

Good luck

Gute Reise!

Have a good trip

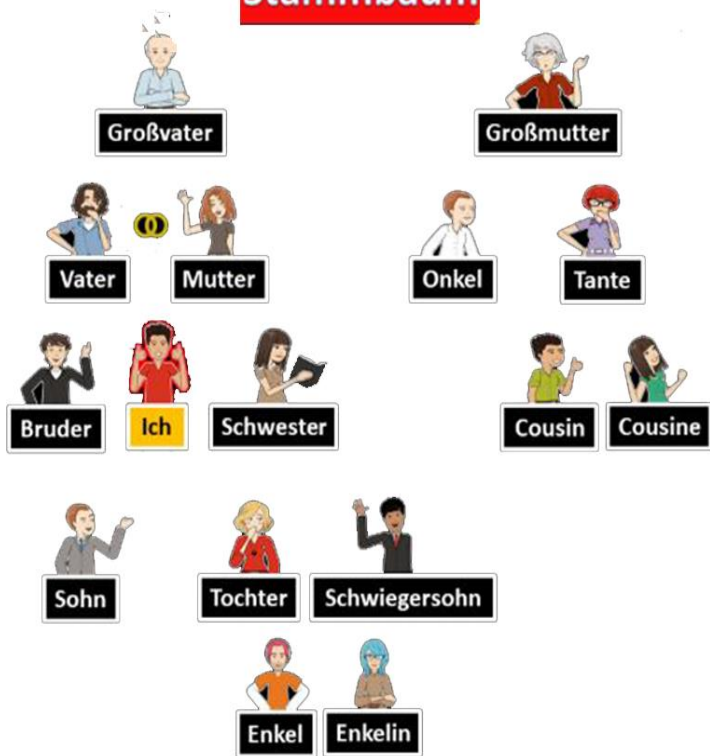
Schönen Tag

Have a good day

Mach's gut

Make it good

Stammbaum



immer <i>always</i>	wie immer <i>as ever</i>
für immer <i>for ever</i>	immer natürlich <i>always, of course</i>
immer mal <i>from time to time, now and again</i>	immer besser <i>better and better</i>
immer mehr <i>more and more</i>	immer häufiger <i>more and more often</i>
immer noch <i>still</i>	wer (auch) immer <i>whoever</i>
immer noch nicht <i>still not; still not yet</i>	wie (auch) immer <i>however</i>
immer schlechter <i>from bad to worse</i>	wann (auch) immer <i>whenever</i>
wie immer <i>as usual, as always</i>	wo (auch) immer <i>wherever</i>
nur immer zu! <i>keep it up!, keep up the good work!</i>	was (auch) immer <i>whatever</i> <i>languagelearningbase.com</i>

der Apfelsaft		die Nudeln	
der Kakao		die Kekse	
der Braten		die Pommes frites	
der Zwieback		der Reis	
der Aufschnitt		der Orangensaft	
das Brot		der Honig	
das Müsli		die Sahne	

der Film - Movie	
der Actionfilm <i>Action Movie</i>	die Komödie <i>Comedy</i>
das Krimi <i>Crime Film</i>	der Dokumentarfilm <i>Documentary</i>
das Drama <i>Drama</i>	der Familienfilm <i>Family Movie</i>
der Auslandsfilm <i>Foreign Movie</i>	der Horrorfilm <i>Horror Movie</i>
der Romantischer Film <i>Romance</i>	die Romantische Komödie <i>Romantic Comedy</i>
der Sci-Fi-Film <i>Sci-Fi Movie</i>	der Sportfilm <i>Sports Movie</i>
der Teenager-film <i>Teen Movie</i>	der Kriegsfilm <i>War Movie</i>

das Fleisch		die Suppe	
das Hähnchen		der Tee	
der Kaffee		die Tomate	
die Kartoffel		der Wein	
der Käse		die Wurst	
der Kuchen		die Zigarette	
die Milch		der Zucker	

GERMAN VOCABULARY: WEATHER



das Eis the Ice



der Tau the Dew

der Himmel the Sky



der Sturm the Storm



die Sonne the Sun

der Regen the Rain

der Hagel the Hail

der Nebel the Fog



der Schnee the Snow



der Blitz the Lightning

der Donner the Thunder

der Wind the Wind










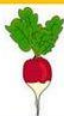
















die Wolke the Cloud



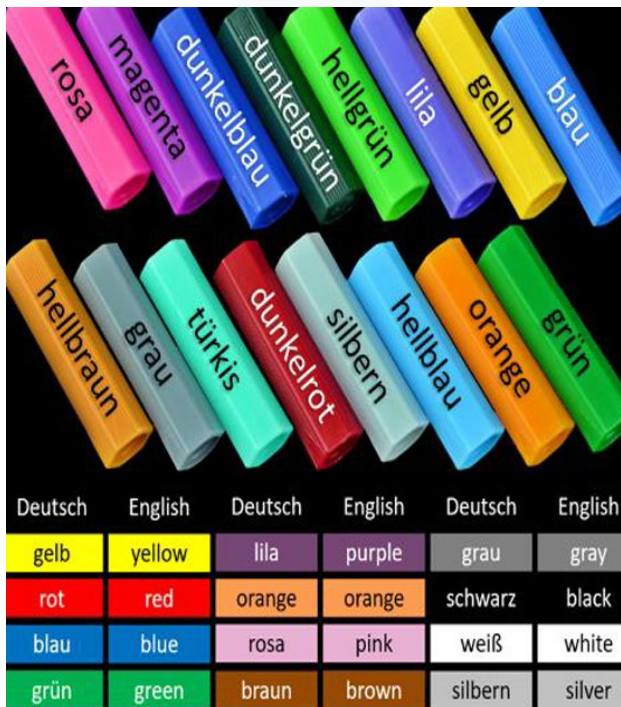
der Regenbogen the Rainbow



	ERBSEN		PAPRIKA
	GURKE		AUBERGINE
	OLIVEN		KOHL
	ZUCCHINI		SPINAT
	ARTICHOKE		RETTICH
	SPARGEL		RÜBE

	ZITRONE		ORANGE
	BANANE		MELONE
	KIWI		HEIDEL- BEEREN
	KASCHU		PASSIONS FRUCHT
	BROMBEEREN		STACHEL BEEREN
	PAPAYA		AVOCADO

FARBEN



Welche Farbe hat es?

Es ist...

Ich gehe um 21 Uhr ins Bett.

I go to bed at 9 p.m.

Lass uns unser Mittagessen essen, dann reden wir.

let's eat our lunch then we talk.

Das ist ja toll!	This is great!
Ruf mich an!	Keep in touch!
Was ist los?	What's wrong?
Keine Ahnung..	I have no idea.
Gehen wir!	Let's go!
Nicht zu lassen!	I can't believe it!
Du hast Recht!	You are right!
Auf keinen Fall!	No way!
Nicht schlecht..	Not bad..
Das ist mir egal..	I don't care..

kommen to come	gehen to go	fahren to drive	fliegen to fly
essen to eat	trinken to drink	schlafen to sleep	schreiben to write
sagen to say	sehen to see	sitzen to sit	laufen to run
bleiben to stay	lachen to laugh	tun to do	machen to make
hören to hear	lesen to read	leben to live	aufstehen* to get up
schwimmen to swim	kaufen to buy	verkaufen to sell	frühstücken to breakfast
weinen to weep	denken to think	sparen to save	ausgeben* to spend
warten to wait	stellen to put	stehen to stand	liegen to lie
		legen to lay	

phantasievoll <i>imaginative, full of fantasy</i>	dumm <i>dumb</i>
brutal <i>brutal, violent</i>	interessant <i>interesting</i>
spannend <i>exciting, thrilling</i>	langweilig <i>boring</i>
traurig <i>sad</i>	grausam <i>cruel</i>
schön <i>beautiful, great</i>	sensationell <i>sensational</i>
schmalzig <i>corny, mushy</i>	lustig <i>funny</i>
anders <i>different</i>	ausbildend <i>educational</i>
erregend <i>exciting</i>	komisch <i>funny</i>
fröhlich <i>happy</i>	schreckhaft <i>scary</i>
anspannend <i>suspenseful</i>	langweilig <i>boring</i>
verwirrend <i>confusing</i>	kitschig <i>kitschy</i>
scheußlich <i>nasty</i>	lächerlich <i>ridiculous</i>

In the bag



I like you { Ich mag dich
Ich hab dich gern
Du gefällst mir

I like you a lot { Ich mag dich sehr
Ich hab dich lieb
Ich hab dich mehr als gern
Du gefällst mir sehr

I love you	Ich liebe dich
I love you with all my heart	Ich liebe dich mit ganzem Herzen
I can't live without you	Ohne dich kann ich nicht leben
I love you, only you	Ich liebe dich, nur dich alleine
I'm in love with you	Ich bin in dich verliebt
Kiss me	Küss mich
He/She's the love of my life	Er/Sie ist die große Liebe meines Lebens
He fell in love with her	Er hat sich in sie verliebt
She fell in love with him	Sie hat sich in ihn verliebt
I miss you	Ich vermisse dich / Du fehlst mir

Zahl und Mathematik Number and math



You will notice that the numbers in German are constructed differently than they are in English. Where we would say *twenty-one*, German does it in reverse.

As an example: the German word for *twenty-one* is *einundzwanzig* (which literally translates to “one and twenty”). In older forms of English, the numbers were constructed in the same way they are in German today but with the influence of other languages such as Latin and French, the order flipped.

Grundzahlen

Cardinal numbers.

0	null	30	dreißig
1	eins	31	einunddreißig
2	zwei	40	vierzig
3	drei	50	fünfzig
4	vier	60	sechzig
5	fünf	70	siebzig
6	sechs	80	achtzig
7	sieben	90	neunzig
8	acht	100	hundert oder einhundert
9	neun	105	hundertfünf
10	zehn	150	hundertfünfzig
11	elf	200	zweihundert
12	zwölf	300	dreihundert
13	dreizehn	400	vierhundert
14	vierzehn	500	fünfhundert
15	fünfzehn	1,000	tausend oder eintausend
16	sechzehn	1,001	tausendeins
17	siebzehn	1,100	tausendeinhundert
18	achtzehn	1,210	tausendzweihundertzehn
19	neunzehn	2,000	zweitausend
20	zwanzig	3,000	dreitausend
21	einundzwanzig	10,000	zehntausend
22	zweiundzwanzig	12,000	zwölftausend
23	dreiundzwanzig	20,000	zwanzigtausend
24	vierundzwanzig	100,000	hunderttausend
25	fünfundzwanzig	200,000	zweihunderttausend
26	sechsendzwanzig	1,000,000	(eine) Million
27	siebenundzwanzig	2,000,000	zwei Millionen
28	achtundzwanzig	billion	eine Milliarde
29	neunundzwanzig	trillion	eine Billion

It's the language of **Einstein**, of **Euler**, of some of the most brilliant minds in history. Its numbers already sound awfully close to English. More so when you realize that words starting with “**t**” in English very often have a counterpart starting with “**z**” in German—remember the German “**z**” is pronounced [ts] and “**s**” at the beginning of a word is pronounced like “**z**” in English.

Digits and numbers from zero to twelve: **null** 0, **eins** 1, **zwei** 2, **drei** 3, **vier** 4, **fünf** 5, **sechs** 6, **sieben** 7, **acht** 8, **neun** 9, **zehn** 10, **elf** 11, and **zwölf** 12.

From thirteen to nineteen, the numbers are formed from the matching unit digits, adding the word for ten (**zehn**) at the end:

Dreizehn 13, **vierzehn** 14, **fünfzehn** 15, **sechzehn** 16, **siebzehn** (and not *siebenzehn*) 17, **achtzehn** 18, and **neunzehn** 19.

The tens are formed by adding the suffix **-zig** at the end of the multiplier digit, with the exception of ten, twenty and seventy, still irregular, as well as

thirty: **zehn** 10, **zwanzig** 20, **dreißig** 30
(zig becomes Big), **vierzig** 40, **fünfzig** 50, **sechzig** 60, **siebzig** 70, **achtzig** 80, and **neunzig** 90.

From twenty-one to ninety-nine, the tens and units are joined with the und (and) word, but the unit is said before the ten : **einunddreißig** 31, **fünfunddreißig** 35.

Hundred (hundert) and thousand (tausend) are not separated from the other numbers by a space:

Hunderteinundzwanzig 121

tausendzweihundertneunzehn 1,219.

The unit eins (one) loses its final -s when composed in a number, unless it is the only value after a scale name e.g.: **hunderteins** 101, **tausendeins**, 1001.

The German language uses the long scale for big numbers where the naming pattern of the scale words alternates between the -illion and -illiard suffixes:

10,000: zehntausend ("ten-thousand")der
zehntausendste, der 10.000. ("ten-thousandth")

20,000: zwanzigtausend ("twenty-thousand")der
zwanzigtausendste, der 20.000. ("twenty-
thousandth")

100,000: hunderttausend ("hundred-thousand")der
hunderttausendste, der 100.000. ("hundred-
thousandth")

1,000,000: (eine) Million ("million," "one million,"
or "a million")der millionste, der
1.000.000. ("millionth")

2,000,000: zwei Millionen ("two million")der
zweimillionste, der 2.000.000. ("two-millionth")

1,000,000,000: (eine) Milliarde ("billion," "one
billion," or "a billion")der milliardste, der
1,000,000,000. ("the billionth")

1,000,000,000,000: (eine) Billion ("trillion," "one
trillion," or "a trillion")der billionste, der
1,000,000,000,000 ("the trillionth")

Note: In German, one million is *eine Million*, but two
million is *zwei Millionen* ("two millions"). An

American billion is a German *Milliarde*. A German *Billion* is an American "trillion."

Ordnungszahlen Ordinal Numbers



The **2nd** and **4th** up to the **19th** add the ending **-te** to the cardinal number. From the **20th** to the **100th**, the

1000th, the **1,000,000th** add the ending **-ste** to the cardinal number. The **1st** and **3rd** numbers are irregular. The **-en** drops before adding the ordinal suffix **-te** and 8 (**achte**) which adds only an **e** because the number already ends in **-t**. The **-e** ending on each ordinal number is in fact an **adjective ending**. The ending could change based on the case in which it appears and on the **gender** and **number** of the noun it modifies. Possible suffixes are: **-e**, **-en**, **-er**, **-es**, and less commonly **-em**.

Mein zweites Semester kommt bald zu Ende. My second semester is coming to an end soon.

Ich lese das Buch jetzt zum vierten Mal.

This is my fourth time reading the book.

Bald ist unser fünfundreißigster Hochzeitstag.

It will soon be our thirty-fifth wedding anniversary

Mein 2. Semester kommt bald zu Ende.

My second semester is coming to an end soon.

Bald ist unser 35. Hochzeitstag.

It will soon be our 35th wedding anniversary.

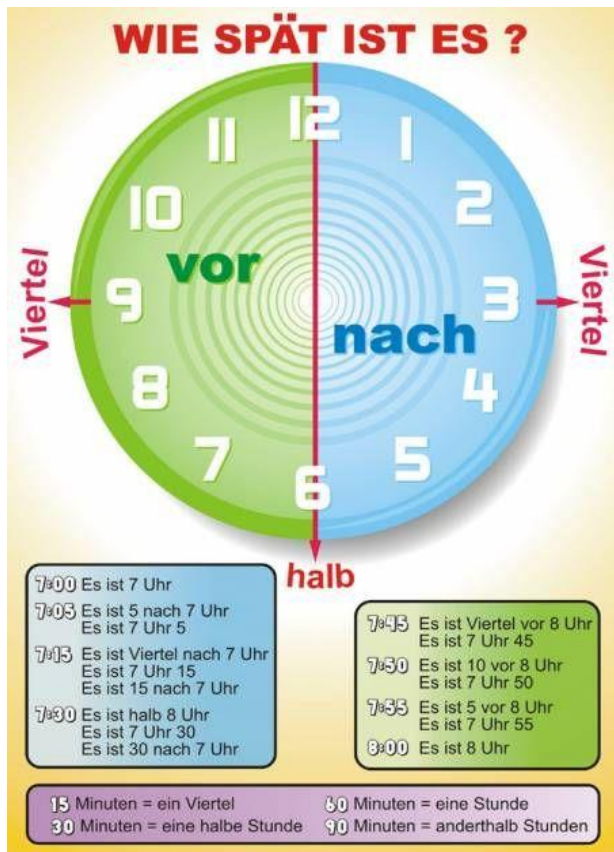
Ich lese das Buch jetzt zum 4. Mal.

This is my fourth time reading the book.

Heute ist der 20. April.

Today is April 20th.

Daten Sagen saying time



When **expressing a year**, the numbers from 1,100 to 1,999 are said in tens of hundreds. 1985= **neunzehnhundertfünfundachtzig**.

For the years **1100** to **1999** in German, you must say the hundred rather than the tausend, as for 1152 (**elfhundertzweiundfünfzig**) or 1864 (**achtzehnhundertvierundsechzig**).

1100: elfhundert (year,number)**tausendeinhundert**
(number only)

1200: **zwölfhundert** (year,number)**tausendzweihundert** (number only)

1800: **achtzehnhundert** (year, number)

1900: **neunzehnhundert** (year, number)

2000: **zweitausend** (year, number)

"In the year 2001" can be spoken or written in German as **im Jahre 2001** or **im Jahr 2001** (zweitausendeins). The phrase **im Jahre** means "in the year," as in: **Im Jahre 1350** (dreizehnhundertfünfzig) ("In the year 1350"). If the word **Jahr** is left out, then the year is used by itself, with no **im** ("in the").

Er ist im Jahre 2001 geboren. / Er ist 2001 geboren.

He was born in (the year) 2001.

Er ist im Jahre 1958 geboren./ Er ist 1958 geboren.

He was born in 1958.

Kolumbus hat 1492 Amerika entdeckt.

Columbus discovered America in 1492.

1492: vierzehnhundertzweiundneunzig

To convey the Christian calendar use of **A.D**; anno domini, years after christ. **B.C** Before Christ, German uses **n.Chr.** (nach Christus) for **A.D.** and **v.Chr. vor Christus** for B.C. C.E. and B.C.E., for Common Era and Before Common Era, were used mostly in East Germany like so: **u.Z unserer Zeitrechnung** for **C.E.**, and **v.u.Z. vor unserer Zeitrechnung** for B.C.E.

Tage der Woche (Days of the week), which are all masculine:

Montag (*mohn-tahgk*) (Monday)

Dienstag (*deens-tahgk*) (Tuesday)

Mittwoch (*mît-vôH*) (Wednesday)

Donnerstag (*dônrs-tahgk*) (Thursday)

Freitag (*fry-tâgk*) (Friday)

Samstag (*zâmss-tahgk*) (Saturday)

Sonntag (*zôn-tahgk*) (Sunday)

Monaten des Jahres (months of the year)

look almost the same as English.

Januar (January)

Februar (February)

März (*mêrts*) (March)

April (April)

Mai (*my*) (May)

Juni (*yoo-nee*) (June)

Juli (*yoo-lee*) (July)

August (August)

September (*zêp-têm-ber*) (September)

Oktober (*ôk-toh-ber*) (October)

November (November)

Dezember (*deh-tsêm-ber*) (December)

When giving a date in German, you state the number as an ordinal, just like English. The numbers from 0 to 19 end in –**te** to form ordinals like **zehnte** (10th). Note that there are

three irregular formations: **erste** (1st), **dritte** (3rd), and **siebte** (7th). The numbers from 20 and higher end in –**ste**, like **zwanzigste** (20th).

You can use the following phrases when discussing dates in German.

Der zweite Februar (February 2nd)

Der dreiundzwanzigste Juli (July 23rd)

Der erste November (November 1st)

Welchen Tag haben wir heute? (What day is today)

Heute ist Freitag. (Today is Friday.)

Der Wievielte ist heute? (What's today's date?)

Heute ist der dritte Mai. (Today is the third of May.)

Wochentage	Weekdays	Tageszeiten	Daytime
Montag	monday	Morgen	morning
Dienstag	tuesday	Vormittag	late morning
Mittwoch	wednesday	Mittag	noon
Donnerstag	thursday	Nachmittag	afternoon
Freitag	friday	Abend	evening
Samstag	saturday	Nacht	night
Sonntag	sunday	Mitternacht	midnight
Monate			
Januar	April	Juli	Oktober
Februar	Mai	August	November
März	Juni	September	Dezember

The time of day can be described in general terms or specific times. You can use the following words to describe the general time of day.

der Morgen (morning)

der Nachmittag (afternoon)

der Abend (evening)

die Nacht (night)

der Tag (day)

der Mittag (noon)

die Mitternacht (midnight)

heute (today)

gestern (yesterday)

morgen (tomorrow)

When you want to know a specific time of day, you can ask: **Wie viel Uhr ist es?** (What time is it?).

There is no *a.m.* or *p.m.* in German. They use a 24-hour clock, so, 4 p.m. would be **seize heures** (16 hours). To express time between the hours, use the following terms to break things down.

die Zeit (time)

die Stunde(n) (hour)

die Minute(n) (minute)

die Sekunde(n) (second)

halb (half)

Viertel (quarter)

Nach (after)

Vor (before)

Es ist zehn nach zwei (It's ten after two)

Zehn vor elf (It's ten til 11)

Uhr= O'clock

Wissen Sie, wie viel Uhr es ist? (Do you know what time it is?)

Wie viel Uhr ist es? (What time is it?)

Es ist ein Uhr. (It's 1 a.m.)

Es ist Viertel nach vier. (It's 4:15 a.m.)

Es ist siebzehn Uhr dreißig. (It's 5:30 p.m.)

Es ist dreiundzwanzig Uhr fünfundvierzig. (It's 11:45 p.m.)

Haben Sie ein paar Minuten Zeit? (Do you have a couple of minutes to spare?)

Um wie viel Uhr fahren Sie ab? (What time do you leave?)

In zwei Stunden. (In two hours.)

Es ist früh. (It's early.)

Du kommst aber spät. (You're really late.)

mathematische Begriffe Math Terms



Grundoperationen

Basic operations

Die Addition Addition ; $2 + 2 = 4$

zwei und zwei sind vier.

two and two are four.

zwei plus zwei sind vier.

two plus two are four.

zwei plus zwei gleich vier.

two plus two equals four.

Die Subtraktion Subtraction; $10 - 3 = 7$

zehn weniger drei ist sieben.

ten less three is seven.

zehn minus drei gleich sieben.

ten less three equals seven.

Die Multiplikation Multiplication; $2 \times 3 = 6$
zwei mal drei sind sechs.

two times three is six.

zwei multipliziert mit drei ist gleich sechs.

two multiplied by three equals six.

Die Division Division; $10 / 2 = 5$

zehn (geteilt) durch zwei sind fünf.

ten divided by 2 is five.

Noun	Meaning	Plural
Der Zähler	numerator	die Zähler
Der Nenner	denominator	die Nenner
Der Quotient	quotient	die Quotienten
Der Rest	remainder	die Reste

Die Quadratwurzel Square root

Noun	Meaning	Plural
die gerade Zahl	the even number	die geraden Zahlen
die ungerade Zahl	the odd number	die ungeraden Zahlen
die Primzahl	the prime number	die Primzahlen
die natürliche Zahl	the natural number	die natürlichen Zahlen
die ganze Zahl	the whole number	die ganzen Zahlen
die rationale Zahl	the rational number	die rationalen Zahlen
die reelle Zahl	the real number	die reellen Zahlen

die komplexe Zahl	the complex number	die komplexen Zahlen
--------------------------	--------------------	----------------------

die Quadratwurzel aus neun ist drei
the square root of nine is three

Arten von Zahlen

Types of numbers

Bruchzahlen Fractions

$1/2$ = **ein halb** = (a) half,

$1 \frac{1}{2}$ = **eineinhalb oder anderthalb** = one and a half

$2 \frac{1}{2}$ = **zweieinhalb** = two and a half

$1/3$ = **ein Drittel** = a third

$2/3$ = **zwei Drittel** = two thirds

$1/4$ = **ein Viertel** = a fourth

$1 \frac{1}{4}$ = **ein ein Viertel** = one and a fourth

$3/4$ = **drei Viertel** = three fourths

$1/5$ = **ein Fünftel** = a fifth

$34/5$ = **drei vier Fünftel** = three and four fifths

$1/11$ = **ein Elftel** = one eleventh

$5/12$ = **fünf Zwölftel** = five twelfths

$2/13$ = **zwei Dreizehntel** = two thirteenths

Praktische Beispiele (Practical examples):

$\frac{1}{2}$ Liter = half a liter ; $\frac{1}{2}$ Liter = **einhalb Liter**

$1\frac{1}{2}$ liters = one and a half liters ; $1\frac{1}{2}$ Liter = **eineinhalb Liter**

Dezimal Zahlen

Decimal numbers : Here a **comma** is used instead of a point.

0,1 = **null Komma eins** = zero comma one

0,2 = **null Komma zwei** = zero comma two

1,1 = **eins Komma eins** = one comma one

1,11 = **eins Komma elf / eins Komma eins eins** = one comma eleven.

0.1 = **null Punkt eins** = zero point one

0.2 = **null Punkt zwei** = zero point two

1.1 = **eins Punkt eins** = one point one

1.11 = **eins Punkt elf** = one point eleven

Preise prices

0,05 € = **fünf Cent** = five cents

2 € = **zwei Euro** = two Euros

2,10 € = **zwei Euro zehn (Cent)** = two Euro ten

Positive und negative Zahlen

(+1) plus eins **(-1) minus eins**

plus one

minus one

Deklination der Kardinalzahlen

Declension of cardinal numbers

The cardinal numbers are **not declined** with the exception of **1, 2** and **3**.

Formel eins = Formula one

If the "1" is followed by a **noun**, usually the **weak declension** is used, being equivalent to the **indefinite article**.

Ich habe eine Lampe.

I have a lamp.

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Plural
Nominative	ein	eine	ein	--
Accusative	einen	eine	ein	--
Dative	einem	einer	einem	--
Genitive	eines	einer	eines	--

If the **2** or **3** are **not followed** by a **noun**, they are **not declined** and simply **zwei** and **drei** are used:
If the **2** or **3** are **followed** by a **noun**, they are **declined** only in the **genitive** in the case of them not being preceded by an **article**:

Abstand zweier Punkte.

Distance of two points.

In fact Ordinal numbers follow the **adjective declension** rules.

Die Kosten der zweiten Wohnung.

The expenses of the second home.

Die Geometrie Geometry

Zweidimensionale Formen

Two dimensional shapes (**2-D**)

das Dreieck = triangle, **das Viereck** = rectangle

das Trapez = trapeze, **der Rhombus** = rhombus

das Parallelogramm = parallelogram

das Rechteck = rectangle, **das Quadrat** = square

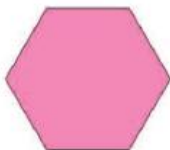
das Fünfeck = pentagon, **das Sechseck** = hexagon

das Hexagon = hexagon, **das Siebeneck** = heptagon

das Achteck = octagon, **die Ellipse** = ellipse
der Kreis = circle, **das Polygon** = polygon



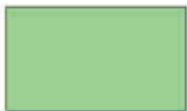
das Fünfeck
pentagon



das Sechseck
hexagon



das Achteck
octagon



das Rechteck
rectangle



der Rhombus
rhombus



das Trapez
trapezium

der Winkel
angle

die Hypotenuse
hypotenuse

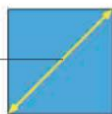


das Dreieck
triangle



das
Parallelogramm
parallelogram

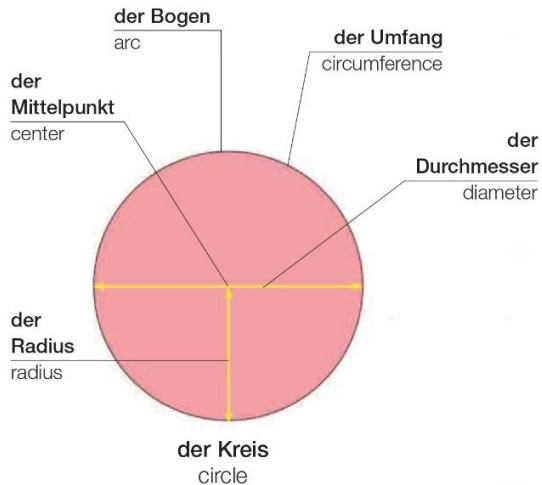
die Diagonale
diagonal



das Quadrat
square



das Oval
oval



Drei dimensionale Formen

Three dimensional Shapes (**die körper**; solids)

das Tetraeder = tetrahedron, **der Würfel** = cube

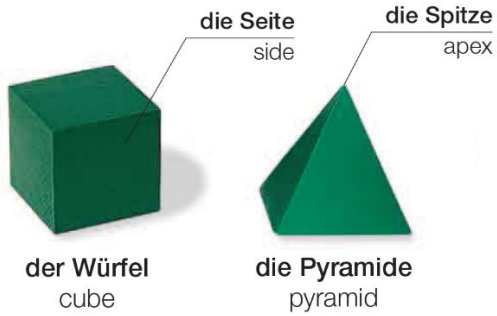
das Hexaeder = hexahedron, **das Oktaeder** = octahedron

das Dodekaeder = dodecahedron,

das Ikosaeder = icosahedron

die Sphäre = sphere, **der Zylinder** = cylinder,

der Kegel = cone.



die Linien • lines





senkrecht
perpendicular



gekrümmt
curved

die Maße • measurements



das Volumen
volume



der Zähler
numerator

der Nenner
denominator

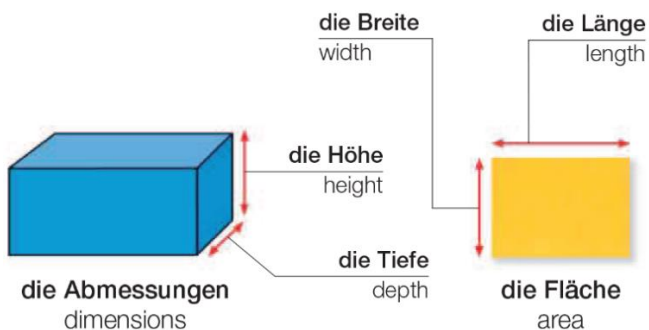
der Bruch
fraction



der Zirkel
compass



der
Taschenrechner
calculator



die Ausrüstung • equipment



Konzepte aus der Geometrie

Concepts from geometry

die Kante = edge, **die Winkelhalbierende** = bisecting line

die Seitenfläche = side, **die Diagonale** = diagonal

Funktionen aus der Trigonometrie

Functions from Trigonometry

der Sinus = sine, **der Kosinus** = cosine

der Tangens = tangent, **der Kotangens** = cotangent,

der Sekans = secant, **der Kosekans** = cosecant

Konzepte aus der Trigonometrie

die Kathete = leg, **die Hypotenuse** = hypotenuse

die Ankathete = adjacent leg, **die Gegenkathete** = opposite (leg), **der Winkel** = angle, **der rechte Winkel** = right angle

der Satz des Pythagoras = Pythagorean theorem

die X-Koordinate = abscissa, **die Y-Koordinate** = ordinate

die X-Achse = the x-axis, **die Y-Achse** = the y-axis

der Ursprung des Koordinatensystems =

the origin of the coordinate system.

Die Differentialrechnung

Differential Calculus

die Steigung = the slope, **die Tangenskurve** = the tangent curve, **die Ableitung** = the derivation, **der Wendepunkt** = the inflection point, **die abhängige variable** = the dependent variable **das Integral** = the integral, **zusammenlaufen** = to converge, **fallend** = decreasing, **fallen** = to decrease, **ableiten** = to derive, **unstetig** = discontinuous

Allgemeine Mathematik- Vokabeln

general math vocabularies

die Hochzahl = exponent, **der Exponent** = exponent
die Fakultät = factorial, **die Unbekannte** = unknown
der Logarithmus = logarithm, **die Gleichung** = equation
der Limes = limit, **auflösen** = clear

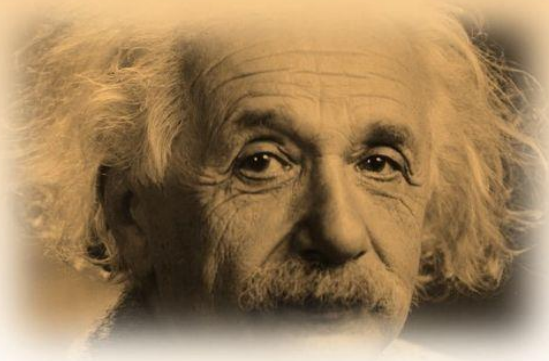
Jeder ist ein Genie! Aber wenn Du einen
Fisch danach beurteilst, ob er auf einen
Baum klettern kann, wird er sein ganzes
Leben glauben, dass er dumm ist.

www.quotecanyon.com

Everybody is a genius. But if you judge a
fish by its ability to climb a tree, it will live
its whole life believing that it is stupid.

Albert Einstein

www.quotecanyon.com



GRUNDLEGENDE DEUTSCHE GRAMMATIK

BASIC GERMAN GRAMMAR



Substantive und Artikel Nouns and Articles

Nouns are words that refer to beings, places and things.

Die Frau (*the* woman), **der Bahnhof** (*the* train station) **das Wetter** (*the* weather).

German nouns can be used with **masculine (der)**, **feminine (die)** or **neuter (das)** articles. The masculine definite article is **der** (*the*).

Der Bauer /dair bow-uh/ *the farmer*

Der Bruder /dair broo-duh/ *the brother*

Der Herr /dair hair/ *the gentleman, Mr.*

The **gender** of a **noun** is often determined not by its meaning but by the **formation of the word**. Nouns ends in **-er, -el, -en** is often masculine.

Der Keller /dair kell-uh/ the cellar, basement

Der Wecker /dair veck-uh/ the alarm clock

Der Löffel /dair l(er)-fell/ the spoon

Der Mantel /dair munn-tell/ the coat

Der Boden /dair boh-den/ the floor

Der Wagen /dair vah-gen/ the car

The adjectives **Ihr** and **mein** are *your* and *my*, respectively, and can modify any masculine noun.

Ist ihr sohn zu hause?

/ist eer zohn tsoo how-zeh/

Is your son at home?

Mein Sohn ist bei Felix.

/mine zohn ist bye fay-lix/

My son is at Felix's house.

Ist Ihr Vater in der Schweiz?

/ist eer fah-tuh in dair shveyetze/

Is your father in Switzerland?

Mein Vater ist in Berlin.

/mine fah-tuh ist in bare-léen/

My father is in Berlin.

Ist Ihr Mantel hier?

/ist eer munn-tell hee-uh/

Is your coat here?

Mein Mantel ist im Garten.

/mine munn-tell ist im gah-ten/

My coat is in the garden.

Wo ist Ihr Bruder?

/voh ist eer broo-duh/

Where is your brother?

Mein Bruder ist bei Peter.

/mine broo-duh ist bye pay-tuh/

My brother is at Peter's house.

Wo ist Ihr Wecker?

/voh ist eer veck-uh/

Where is your alarm clock?

Mein Wecker ist zu Hause.

/mine veck-uh ist tsoo how-zeh/

My alarm clock is at home.

Note: In German capitalize all nouns. Martin der **Lehrer**, Herr Braun mein **Wagen**, Alex Keller Ihr **Bruder**, Thomas der **Bauer** (farmer).

The feminine definite article is **die** (*the*).

Die Bäuerin /dee boy-uh-rin/ the female farmer

Die Frau /dee frow/ the woman, Mrs., Ms.

Die Kellnerin /dee kell-nuh-rin/ the waitress

Die Lehrerin /dee lay-ruh-rin/ the female teacher

Die Mutter /dee moo-tuh/ the mother

Die Schwester /dee shves-tuh/ the sister

Die Tante /dee tun-the/ the aunt

Die Tochter /dee tawch-tuh/ the daughter

*Note: Die Kellnerin and Die Lehrerin ended in (-in). this is a signal that **the noun in question will always be feminine**. And it is most often the feminine counterpart of a masculine noun that is identical except for that ending. If you know a feminine noun that ends in **-in**, you can be certain that there is a masculine counterpart to that noun.*

Die Bäuerin/der Bauer farmer

/boy-uh-rin/bow-uh/

Die Lehrerin/der Lehrer teacher

/lay-ruh-(rin)/

Die Kellnerin/der Kellner waitress/waiter

/kell-nuh-(rin)/

Die Juristin/der Jurist lawyer

/yoo-ris-(in)/

Die Studentin/der Student student

/shtoo-dent-(in)/

Die Wirtin/der Wirt landlady/landlord

/veert-(in)/

Einige Namen auf Deutsch

Some names in German

Vornamen first names

Alex /ah-lex/, **Andreas** /ahn-dray-uss/, **Felix** /fay-lix/**Frank** /frahnk/, **Lars** /lahs/, **Martin** /mah-teen/, **Peter** /pay-tuh/, **Stefan** /shteh-fahn/, **Thomas** /toe-mahs/, **Angela** /ahn-geh-luh/, **Gabi** /gah-bee/, Ingrid /een-greet/, Monika /moe-nee-kuh/, **Sonja** /zone-yuh/.

Guten Tag, Felix. Hello, Felix.

Auf Wiedersehen, Martin. Good-bye, Martin.

/owf vee-duh-zay-en mah-teen/.

Nachnamen Last names

Braun brown, **Dorf** dohrf, **Keller** kell-uh, **Klein** kline,
Neufeld /noy-felt/, **Rieger** /ree-guh/, **Schäfer** /shay-
fuh/, **Schmidt** /shmitt/, **Schneider** /shneye-duh/.

***Note:** Adult men are addressed with **Herr** (Mr.). You say:*

***Guten Tag** (hello)/ **Guten Morgen** (good morning)/
Guten Abend (good evening)/ **Gute Nacht** (good
night) **Herr Dorf**.*

*Adult women are addressed with **Frau** /frow/ (Mrs,
Miss, Ms). You say: **Guten Morgen, Tina, Wo ist
Ursula?** Where is Ursula?*

Mein Name ist Alex. *My name is Alex.*

The verb **heißen** means be called. Notice the
conjugational endings.

Wie **heißen** Sie? *What is your name?*

Ich **heiße** Thomas. *My name is Thomas.*

Sie **heißen** Frau Keller. *Your name is Ms. Keller.*

Wie **heißt** das Mädchen? *What is the girl's name?*

Das Mädchen **heißt** Sonja. *The girl's name is Sonja.*

WO= where, **Hier** = here, **Da**= there

Wo ist Felix? *Where is Felix?*

/voh ist fay-lix/

Wo ist Herr Klein? *Where is Mr. Kline?*

/voh ist hair kline/

Herr Keller ist hier. *Mr. Keller is here.*

/hair kell-uh ist hee-uh/

Peter ist hier. *Peter is here.*

/pay-tuh ist hee-uh/

Peter ist da. *Peter is there.*

At (**bei, zu**), In (**in, im**)

Bei Felix /bye fay-lix/ **at** *Felix's house*

Bei Peter /bye pay-tuh/ **at** *Peter's house*

Im Garten /im gah-ten/ **in** *the garden/yard*

In Berlin /in bare-léen/ **in** *Berlin*

In der Schweiz /in dair shveyetse/ **in** *Switzerland*

In Hamburg /in hahm-boork/ **in** *Hamburg*

Zu Hause /tsoo how-zah/ **at** *home.*

Guten Tag, Herr Keller.

Hello/good day, Mr. Keller.

Wo ist Thomas? *Where is Thomas?*

Thomas ist zu Hause. *Thomas is home.*

Guten Abend, Herr Braun.

Good evening, Mr. Brown.

Wo ist Herr Klein? *Where is Mr. Kline?*

Herr Klein ist in Berlin. *Mr. Klein is in Berlin.*

Guten Morgen, Alex. *Good morning, Alex.*

Wo ist Martin? *Where is Martin?*

Martin ist bei Felix haus.

Martin is at Felix's house.

Gute Nacht, Herr Schäfer.

Good night, Mr. Schäfer.

Gute Nacht, Lars. *Good night, Lars.*

*Note: **Auf Wiedersehen** is the most common way of saying good-bye and means something close to **until I see you again**. When you say good-bye to a telephone caller, you say **auf Wiederhören**, which means approximately, **until I hear your voice again**. Also **tschüß** = so long or see you later.*

Auf Wiedersehen Herr Keller.

/owf vee-duh-zay-en hair kell-uh./

Good-bye, Mr. Keller.

Gute Nacht, Alex. *Good night, Alex.*

Auf Wiederhören, Herr Schmidt.

/owf vee-duh-h(er)-ren hair shmitt /

Good-bye, Mr. Schmidt.

Tschüss, Andreas. *So long, Andreas.*

/chuess ahn-dray-us/.

Many nouns that describe an **inanimate object** are **feminine**—that is, they use **die** as their definite article. Most of them end in **-e**.

Die Lampe /dee lum-peh/ *the lamp*

Die Schule /dee shoo-leh/ *the school*

Die Küche /dee kue-**ch**-eh/ *the kitchen*

Die Tür /dee tue-uh/ *the door*

Die Decke /dee deck-eh/ *the blanket*

Die Milch /dee milch/ *the milk*

Die Uhr /dee oo-uh/ *the clock*

Die Straße /dee shtrah-she/ *the street*

Die Tasche /dee tush-eh/ *the (hand) bag*

When you modify feminine nouns with **Ihr** and **mein**, they change to **Ihre** and **meine**. The meaning has not changed, but the gender has. Just as the definite article ends in **-e**, the adjectives also end in

-e: **Ihre Schule** *your school* and **meine Uhr** *my clock*.

Neuter nouns are always modified by the definite article **das** (*the*). Also we have two suffixes for diminution: **-chen** and **-lein**. **Fräulein** /froy-line/ little woman/Miss.

Das Auto /duss ow-toe/ the car, automobile

Das Haus /duss howss/ the house

Das Kind /duss kint/ the child

Das Mädchen /duss mayt-chen/ the girl

Das Buch /duss booch/ the book

Das Röslein /duss r(er)ss-line/ the little rose

Das Geld /duss gelt/ the money

Das Land /duss lunt/ the land, country

Das Fenster /duss fen-stuh/ the window

***Note:** When you modify a neuter word with **Ihr** or **mein**, no additional ending is needed, for example, **das Kind**, **Ihr Kind**, **mein Kind** and **das Auto**, **IhrAuto**, **mein Auto**.*

Das Land ist groß.

/Duss lunt ist grohss /

The country is big.

Das Auto ist klein.

/duss ow-toe ist kline/

The car is little.

Wo ist das Geld?

/voh ist duss gelt/

Where is the money?

Ist Ihr Kind im Garten?

/ist eer kint im gah-ten /

Is your child in the garden?

German Personal Pronouns

	Singular	Plural
First person:	ich <i>I</i>	wir <i>we</i>
Second person:	du <i>you</i>	ihr <i>you</i>
	Sie <i>you (formal)</i>	Sie <i>you (formal)</i>
Third person:	er <i>he, it</i>	sie <i>they</i>
	sie <i>she, it</i>	
	es <i>it, he, she</i>	

We learned that (**der, die, das** *the*) use with a noun. If a masculine noun refers to an **inanimate** object, its pronoun replacement must be **masculine (er)**, even though the meaning of the noun is an **inanimate** object and not a **male**. The same thing occurs with **feminine** and **neuter** nouns. That is the reason for the translation of **er, sie, and es** as **he** and **it, she** and **it**,

and **it** and **he** and **she** for **masculine**, **feminine**, and **neuter**, respectively.

Der Lehrer ist zu Hause. *The teacher is at home.*

Er ist zu Hause. *He is at home.*

Der Tisch ist in der Küche.

The table is in the kitchen.

Er ist in der Küche. *It is in the kitchen.*

Die Frau ist im Garten.

The woman is in the garden.

Sie ist im Garten. *She is in the garden.*

Die Tasche ist im Garten.

The handbag is in the garden.

Sie ist im Garten. *It is in the garden.*

Das Kind ist bei Sonja.

The child is at Sonja's house.

Es ist bei Sonja. *He/She is at Sonja's house.*

Der Wagen ist alt. *The car is old.*

Er ist alt. *It is old.*

Die Decke ist da. *The blanket is there.*

Sie is da. It is there.

Das Mädchen heißt Monika.

The girl's name is Monika.

Es heißt Monika. *Her name is Monika.*

***Note:** The verb used with the noun is the same as the one used with the pronoun. When **Ihr(e)** or **mein(e)** are used in place of the definite article, the pronoun that replaces the noun phrase still conforms to the gender of the noun.*

Der Wagen ist da. *The car is there.* **Er ist da.** *It is there.*

Ihr Wagen ist da. *Your car is there.* **Er ist da.** *It is there.*

Mein Wagen ist da. *My car is there.* **Er ist da.** *It is there.*

Der Mann ist alt. *The man is old.*

Mein Vater ist alt. *My father is old.*

Das Kind ist im Garten. *The child is in the garden.*

Ihr Kind ist im Garten.

Your child is in the garden.

Wo ist die Decke? *Where is the blanket?*

Wo ist meine Decke? *Where is my blanket?*

Der Pilot ist in der Schweiz.

The pilot is in Switzerland.

Ihr Sohn ist in der Schweiz.

Your son is in Switzerland.

Ihre Schwester ist in Berlin.

Your sister is in Berlin.

Ist das Auto alt? Is the car old?

Ist Ihr Auto zu Hause? Is your car at home?

Wie heißt die Frau? What is the woman's name?

Meine Frau heißt Angela.

My wife's name is Angela.

Heißt der Junge Alex? Is the boy's name Alex?

Heißt das Mädchen Tina? Is the girl's name Tina?

Das Mädchen ist jung. The girl is young.

Ist Ihr Wagen neu? Is your car new?

Das Haus ist weiß. The house is white.

Mein Hut ist schwarz. My hat is black.

Ist Ihre Bluse rot? Is your blouse red?

Der Bleistift ist kurz. The pencil is short.

Die Straße ist lang. The street is long.

Mein Rock ist grün. My skirt is green.

Ist Ihr Hemd blau? Is your shirt blue?

Welche Farbe hat das Kleid?

What color is the dress?

Das Kleid ist gelb. The dress is yellow.

Der-words follows the gender pattern of the definite articles. **Welcher** (*which, what*), **dieser**

(*this*), **jener** (*that*), and **jeder** (*each, every*). When they modify a masculine noun, they end in **-er** just like the definite article **der**.

Der Mantel *the coat*, **welcher Mantel** *which (what) coat*, **dieser Mantel** *this coat*, **jener Mantel** *that coat*, **jeder Mantel** *each (every) coat*.

The *feminine definite article* ends in **-e**. When the **der**-words modify *feminine nouns*, they end in **-e**. The *neuter definite article* ends in **-s**. When the **der**-words modify *neuter nouns*, they end in **-es**.

Die Frau ist alt. *The woman is old.*

Welche Frau ist jung? *Which woman is young?*

Diese Frau ist meine Mutter.

This woman is my mother.

Jene Frau heißt Angela.

That woman's name is Angela.

Das Haus ist weiß. *The house is white.*

Welches Haus ist groß? *Which house is big?*

Dieses Haus ist neu. *This house is new.*

Jenes Haus ist klein. *That house is small.*

Ist jedes Haus alt? *Is every house old?*

Ist diese Bluse gelb oder weiß?

Is this blouse yellow or white?

Diese Bluse ist gelb. *This blouse is yellow.*

Welche Farbe hat das Hemd? *What color is the shirt?*

Das Hemd ist braun. *The shirt is brown.*

Note: Welche Farbe hat das Hemd? What color does the shirt have? But for usage we said "what color is the shirt?"

Wer (*who*) and **was** (*what*). Notice **das** is used here to mean *that* in **questions and answers**.

Wer ist das? *Who is that?*

Das ist mein Freund. *That is my friend.*

Ist das Ihr Bruder? *Is that your brother?*

Nein, das ist mein Vetter.

No, that is my cousin. (male cousin)

Wer ist das? *Who is that?*

Das ist meine Freundin. *That is my girlfriend.*

Ist das Ihre Schwester? *Is that your sister?*

Nein, das ist meine Cousine.

No, that is my cousin. (female cousin)

Was ist das? *What is that?*

Das ist mein Fotoapparat. *That is my camera.*

Ist Ihr Fotoapparat alt? *Is your camera old?*

Nein, er ist neu. *No, it is new.*

Was ist das? *What is that?*

Das ist der Laptop. *That is the laptop.*

Ist das mein Laptop? *Is that my laptop?*

Ja, das ist Ihr Laptop. *Yes, that is your laptop.*

Was ist? *What is it? What's up?*

The verb **sein** is the German infinitive that means *be* in English. German infinitives end in **-n** or **-en**. To use it in sentences, it has to be **conjugated**. It means that **specific endings** are used with **specific personal pronouns**. The verb **sein** has irregular conjugation.

	Singular		Plural	
First person:	ich bin	<i>I am</i>	wir sind	<i>we are</i>
Second person:	du bist	<i>you are</i>	ihr seid	<i>you are</i>
	Sie sind	<i>you are</i>	Sie sind	<i>you are</i>
Third person:	er ist	<i>he is</i>	sie sind	<i>they are</i>
	sie ist	<i>she is</i>		
	es ist	<i>it is</i>		

Bin ich in Hamburg? *Am I in Hamburg?*

Nein, du **bist** in Berlin. *No, you are in Berlin.*

Er **ist** mein Freund. *He is my friend.*

Ist sie Ihre Freundin? *Is she your girlfriend?*

Ist Ihr Hemd grün? *Is the shirt green?*

Ja, es **ist** grün. *Yes, it is green.*

Sind Sie zu Hause, Frau Bauer?

Are you at home, Ms. Bauer?

Nein, ich **bin** im Park. *No, I'm at the park.*

Wo **sind** wir? *Where are we?*

Wir **sind** in der Küche. *We are in the kitchen.*

Ihr **seid** im Garten. *You are in the garden.*

Sind sie klein oder groß? *Are they little or big?*

Sie **sind** klein. *They are little.*

All three pronouns (**du**, **ihr**, **Sie**) mean *you*. **Du** is always singular and informal and is used with close friends, children, and family members. **Ihr** is the *plural* of **du**. **Sie** is always formal and can be singular or plural, just like you. It is used with strangers, people of authority, and just to be polite.

The pronoun **Sie** is never confused with **sie**, because of the way it is used. The pronoun **sie** with a singular verb (**ist**) always means **she** or **it**, and **sie** with a plural verb (**sind**) always means **they**. Both are spelled with a small **s** except at the beginning of a sentence.

Nouns are either **third person singular** or **third person plural**. That means that they use only the conjugated forms **ist** or **sind** of the infinitive **sein**.

Die Frau **ist** zu Hause. *The woman is at home.*

Thomas und Sonja **sind** zu Hause.

Thomas and Sonja are at home.

Ist Herr Braun in München?

Is Mr. Brown in Munich?

Nein, er **ist** in Heidelberg. *No, he is in Heidelberg.*

Wo **bin** ich? *Where am I?*

Du **bist** im Keller. *You are in the cellar.*

Sind Sie Richterin, Frau Bauer?

Are you a judge, Ms. Bauer?

Nein, ich **bin** Lehrerin. *No, I am a teacher.*

Sind Erik und Monika Amerikaner? *Are Erik and Monika Americans?*

Nein, sie **sind** Deutsche. *No, they are Germans.*

Was **sind** das? *What are those?*

Das **sind** deutsche Autos. *Those are German cars.*

Kinder, wo **seid** ihr? *Children, where are you?*

Wir **sind** im Garten. *We are in the garden.*

Tina und Erik **sind** in Hamburg. *Tina and Erik are in Hamburg.*

Ist Ihr Haus in Berlin? *Is your house in Berlin?*

Die Kinder **sind** in der Küche.

The children are in the kitchen.

Ein-words follow the pattern of the indefinite article **ein** (*a, an*). All masculine and neuter words use **ein**

as their indefinite article. The feminine definite article ends in **-e**. Likewise, the feminine indefinite article ends in **-e**: **eine** (*a, an*). The adjective **kein/keine** (*no, not any*) is an **ein**-word and follows the pattern of **ein/eine**: **kein** modifies masculine and neuter nouns, and **keine** modifies feminine nouns.

Ein Apfel (der) an apple

Ein Bleistift (der) a pencil

Ein Mann (der) a man

Ein Student (der) a student

Ein Stuhl (der) a chair

Ein Buch (das) a book

Ein Kind (das) *a child*

Ein Sweatshirt (das) *a sweatshirt*

Ein Telefon (das) *a telephone*

Ein Tier (das) *an animal*

Ich habe eine Zeitung. *I have a newspaper.*

Ich habe ein Sweatshirt. *I have a sweatshirt.*

Ein Kind lernt Deutsch. *A child is learning German.*

Ein Junge lernt Englisch. *A boy is learning English.*

Ist das eine CD? *Is that a CD?*

Eine Schule ist in dieser Straße.
A school is on this street.
Eine Bibliothek ist in dieser Straße.
A library is on this street.
Ein Student wohnt in dieser Straße.
A student lives on this street.
Eine Studentin wohnt hier.
A (female) student lives here.
Ein Apfel schmeckt gut. *An apple tastes good.*
Eine Apfelsine schmeckt gut.
An orange tastes good.
Schmeckt eine Apfelsine gut?
Does an orange taste good?
Schmeckt ein Apfel gut? *Does an apple taste good?*
Eine Studentin lernt Deutsch.
A student is learning German.
Ein Student lernt Spanisch.
A student is learning Spanish.
Ist das eine Bibliothek? *Is that a library?*
Nein, das ist eine Schule. *No, that is a school.*
Ich habe eine Landkarte von Deutschland.
I have a map of Germany.
Ich habe eine deutsche Zeitung.
I have a German newspaper.
Eine Großmutter ist alt. *A grandmother is old.*

Ist ein Großvater jung? *Is a grandfather young?*

Nein, ein Großvater ist auch alt.

No, a grandfather is also old.

Ist ein Kind auch alt?

Is a child also old?

Nein, ein Kind ist jung. *No, a child is young.*

Ein Pilot wohnt in dieser Straße.

A pilot lives on this street.

Eine junge Dame wohnt in dieser Straße .

A young lady lives on this street.

Ist das ein Park? *Is that a park?*

Nein, das ist kein Park. *No, that is not a park.*

Ist das eine Apfelsine? *Is that an orange?*

Nein, das ist keine Apfelsine.

No, that is not an orange.

Haben Sie ein Telefon?

Do you have a telephone?

Nein, ich habe kein Telefon.

No, I have no (don't have a) telephone.

Haben Sie eine Uhr? *Do you have a clock?*

Nein, ich habe keine Uhr.

No, I have no (don't have a) clock.

Thomas fliegt nach Berlin.

Thomas is flying to Berlin.

Wir fliegen nach Hause.
We are flying home.
Gehst du auch nach Hause?
Are you going home, too?
Ich gehe mit Andreas und Monika.
I am going with Andreas and Monika.
Hören Sie Radio, Frau Keller?
Are you listening to the radio, Ms. Keller?
Ich höre Musik. *I hear music.*
Die Richterin kauft ein Kleid.
The judge is buying a dress.
Was kauft ihr, Kinder?
Children, what are you buying?
Lernen sie Deutsch oder Spanisch?
Are they learning German or Spanish?
Wir lernen Italienisch.
We are learning Italian.
Was machst du? *What are you doing?*
Ich mache nichts.
I'm not doing anything. (I do nothing.)
Tina schreibt eine Postkarte.
Tina is writing a postcard.
Ich schreibe nichts.
I'm not writing anything. (I write nothing.)

Was trinken Sie, Herr Bauer?
What are you drinking, Mr. Bauer?
Ich trinke Bier. Was trinkst du?
I'm drinking beer. What are you drinking?
Ich trinke nichts. *I'm not drinking anything.*
Er verkauft sein Auto. *He sells his car.*
Wer verkauft dieses große Haus?
Who is selling this big house?
Versteht du Deutsch? *Do you understand German?*
Ich verstehe Deutsch aber nicht gut.
I understand German but not well.

The word **kein/keine** (no/not any) is an adjective. It is used differently from the adverb **nicht** (not). **Kein/keine** responds negatively to the use of **ein/eine**.

Ist das eine Universität?
Is that a university?
Nein, das ist keine Universität.
No, that is not a university.
Das ist eine Schule.
That is a school.

Possessive adjectives modify nouns and tell to whom something belongs and follow the German rules of

gender usage. They are **ein**-words and modify nouns just like **ein/eine** and **kein/keine**.

	Singular		Plural	
	Pronoun/Possessive		Pronoun/Possessive	
First person:	ich	mein <i>my</i>	wir	unser <i>our</i>
Second person:	du	dein <i>your</i>	ihr	euer <i>your</i>
	Sie	Ihr (formal) <i>your</i>	Sie	Ihr (formal) <i>your</i>
Third person:	er	sein <i>his, its</i>	sie	ihr <i>their</i>
	sie	ihr <i>her, its</i>		
	es	sein <i>its, his, her</i>		

Wessen Apfelsine ist das? ***Whose** orange is that?*

Meine Mutter ist Lehrerin. ***My** mother is a teacher.*

Ist **deine** Cousine in der Stadt?

*Is **your** cousin in the city?*

Wo ist **sein** Buch? *Where is **his** book?*

Ist **ihre** Zeitung in der Küche?

*Is **her** newspaper in the kitchen?*

Wessen CD ist das? ***Whose** CD is that?*

Unser Telefon ist kaputt. ***Our** phone is broken.*

Eure Großmutter ist sehr alt.

***Your** grandmother is very old.*

Ist **ihr** Bleistift kaputt? *Is **your** pencil broken?*

Wessen Uhr ist das? ***Whose** clock is that?*

Note: The word **wessen** (*whose*) needs no ending changes for gender.

Wessen Bruder ist das? (masculine)

Whose brother is that?

Wessen Haus ist das? (neuter)

Whose house is that?

Wessen Bluse ist das? (feminine)

Whose blouse is that?

Sie ist zu Hause. **Ihr** Vater ist **mein** Freund

*She is at home. **Her**, father is **my** friend.*

Sie sind zu Hause. **Ihr** Vater ist **mein** Freund

*They are at home. **Their** father is **my** friend.*

(**ihr** refers to plural **sie** (they) and therefore means their.)

*Note: Take note that the feminine of **euer** drops the **e** that stands before **r** and becomes **eure** with an **-e** ending added, but the feminine of **unser** just adds the ending **-e**: **unsere**.*

The verb **haben** means *have*.

	Singular		Plural	
First person:	ich habe	<i>I have</i>	wir haben	<i>we have</i>
Second person:	du hast	<i>you have</i>	ihr habt	<i>you have</i>
	Sie haben	<i>you have</i>	Sie haben	<i>you have</i>
Third person:	er hat	<i>he has</i>	sie haben	<i>they have</i>
	sie hat	<i>she has</i>		
	es hat	<i>it has</i>		

Ich **habe** eine neue Landkarte. *I have a new map.*

Du **hast** kein Geld. *You have no money.*

Er **hat** meine Zeitung. *He has my newspaper.*

Hat sie ein Kleid? *Does she have a dress?*

Wo ist das Kind? Es **hat** mein Buch.

Where is the child? He has my book.

Wir **haben** keine Zeit. *We have no time.*

Habt ihr eine Apfelsine? *Do you have an orange?*

Sie **haben** kein Bier. *They don't have any beer.*

Haben Sie eine Schwester? *Do you have a sister?*

Nein, ich **habe** keine Schwester.

No, I don't have a sister.

Haben Sie eine Zeitung, Herr Bauer?

Do you have a newspaper, Mr. Bauer?

Nein, ich habe keine Zeitung.

No, I don't have a newspaper.

Hat Frau Bauer eine Zeitung?

Does Ms. Bauer have a newspaper?

Nein, sie ist nicht zu Hause.

No, she is not at home.

Hast du ein Buch? *Do you have a book?*

Ja, ich habe ein Buch. *Yes, I have a book.*

Hat der Student auch ein Buch? *Does the student have a book, too?*

Nein, er hat kein Buch. *No, he doesn't have a book.*

Was habt ihr, Kinder? *What do you have, children?*

Wir haben eine Katze. *We have a cat.*

Sie heißt Muschi. *Her name is Muschi.*

The conjugational endings for the verb **haben** are, for the most part, the same endings for other verbs in the present tense.

	Singular	Plural
First person:	ich -e	wir -en
Second person:	du -st	ihr -t
	Sie -en	Sie -en
Third person:	er -t	sie -en
	sie -t	
	es -t	

Wer and **was** are third person singular pronouns and follow the ending patterns of **er**, **sie**, and **es**.

The infinitive **wohnen** means *live* or *reside*. Add endings to stem of the verb **wohn-**.

	Singular		Plural
First person:	ich wohne	<i>I live</i>	wir wohnen <i>we live</i>
Second person:	du wohnst	<i>you live</i>	ihr wohnt <i>you live</i>
	Sie wohnen	<i>you live</i>	Sie wohnen <i>you live</i>
Third person:	er wohnt	<i>he lives</i>	sie wohnen <i>they live</i>
	sie wohnt	<i>she lives</i>	
	es wohnt	<i>it lives</i>	

Wohnt ihr in österreich? *Do you live in Austria?*

Nein, wir **wohnen** in Italien. *No, we live in Italy.*

Wohnen Sie bei Peter? *Do you live at Peter's house?*

Die Kinder? Sie **wohnen** bei Tante Luise
The children? They live at Aunt Luise's house.

Wer **wohnt** oben? *Who lives upstairs?*

Another irregular one is **kommen**

Ich **komme** aus Amerika. *I come from America.*

Du **kommst** aus Deutschland. *You come from Germany.*

Er **kommt** aus österreich. *He comes from Austria.*

Sie **kommt** aus Italien. *She comes from Italy.*

Wir **kommen** nach Hause. *We come home.*

Kommen Sie mit? *Are you coming along?*

Kommen sie nach Hause? *Are they coming home?*

Wer **kommt** mit? *Who is coming along?*

These verbs conjugational pattern in the present tense of **wohnen**:

Fliegen fly, **gehen** go (on foot), **hören** hear, **kaufen** buy
lernen learn, **machen** do/ make, **schreiben** write, **trinken**
drink, **verkaufen** sell, **verstehen** understand.

	fliegen		lernen	
ich	fliege	<i>I fly</i>	lerne	<i>I learn</i>
du	fliegst	<i>you fly</i>	lernst	<i>you learn</i>
er, sie, es	fliegt	<i>he, she, it flies</i>	lernt	<i>he, she, it learns</i>
wir	fliegen	<i>we fly</i>	lernen	<i>we learn</i>
ihr	fliegt	<i>you fly</i>	lernt	<i>you learn</i>
Sie	fliegen	<i>you fly</i>	lernen	<i>you learn</i>
sie <i>pl.</i>	fliegen	<i>they fly</i>	lernen	<i>they learn</i>

In the case of each verb, the infinitive ending **-en** is dropped, which leaves the stem of the verb. Then the conjugational endings appropriate to the personal pronouns are added to the stem: **-e**, **-st**, **-t**, and **-en**.

Nicht is the **negative adverb** that negates a verb or phrase.

Ist Thomas zu Hause? *Is Thomas at home?*

Nein, er ist nicht zu Hause. *No, he is not at home.*

Fliegen Sie nach Frankfurt?

Are you flying to Frankfurt?

Nein, ich fliege nicht nach Frankfurt.

No, I am not flying to Frankfurt.

Two verbs that add an umlaut in the present tense are **fahren** (*drive, travel*) and **laufen** (*run*).

	fahren		laufen	
ich	fahre	<i>I drive</i>	laufe	<i>I run</i>
du	fährst	<i>you drive</i>	läufst	<i>you run</i>
er	fährt	<i>he drives</i>	läuft	<i>he runs</i>
sie	fährt	<i>she drives</i>	läuft	<i>she runs</i>
es	fährt	<i>he/she/it drives</i>	läuft	<i>he/she/it runs</i>
wir	fahren	<i>we drive</i>	laufen	<i>we run</i>
Sie	fahren	<i>you drive</i>	laufen	<i>you run</i>
ihr	fahrt	<i>you drive</i>	lauft	<i>you run</i>
sie	fahren	<i>they drive</i>	laufen	<i>they run</i>
wer	fährt	<i>who drives</i>	läuft	<i>who runs</i>

Fahren Sie nach Hause? *Are you driving home?*

Nein, ich fahre nach München.

No, I'm driving to Munich.

Fährt Ihre Schwester mit?

Is your sister going (driving) along?

Nein, sie fährt nicht mit. *No, she's not going along.*

Wohin fährt sie? *Where is she driving to?*

Sie fährt nach Polen. *She's driving to Poland.*

Wir fahren nach Frankreich. *We're driving to France.*

Fahrt ihr mit dem Auto? *Are you going (driving) by car?*

Nein, wir fahren mit dem Bus. *No, we're going by bus.*

Wohin laufen die Kinder?

Where are the children running?

Thomas läuft in den Garten.

Thomas is running into the garden.

Aber Tina läuft nach Hause.

But Tina is running home.

Wohin läufst du? *Where are you running?*

Ich laufe zum Park. *I'm running to the park.*

Wer läuft zum Cafe? *Who's running to the café?*

Der Kellner läuft zum Cafe.

The waiter is running to the café.

Note: **Wo** is used to ask where someone or something is located: **Wo** ist die Universität? *Where is the university?* While **Wohin** is used to ask where to or to what destination with motion verbs such as **gehen** go, **fahren** drive, and **laufen** run. **Wohin** fährt der Mann? *Where is the man driving?* Also **woher** is used for movement away from a place, **Woher** kommst du? *Where do you come from?*

Wo wohnt Frau Schneider?

Where does Ms. Schneider live?

Sie wohnt in der Hauptstadt. *She lives in the capital.*

Fahren Sie nach Berlin? *Are you driving to Berlin?*

Ja, ich fahre mit dem Auto nach Berlin.

Yes, I'm going by car to Berlin.

Meine Tante wohnt auch da.

My aunt lives there, too.

Wohin fährst du, Lars?

Where are you driving, Lars?

Ich fahre nach Paris. *I'm driving to Paris.*

Meine Freunde wohnen da. *My friends live there.*

Woher kommen sie? Aus Frankreich?

Where are they from? From France?

Nein, sie kommen aus Österreich.

No, they come from Austria.

Wie heißt der neue Student?

What is the new student's name?

Er heißt Simon Neufeld.

His name is Simon Neufeld.

Woher kommt er? *Where does he come from?*

Er kommt aus Amerika. *He comes from America.*

Aber seine Familie ist deutsch.

But his family is German.

Verbs with vowel **e** in their stem shifts to an **i** but only in the second and third persons singular. **Nehmen** (take) that also changes the **h** to another **m**.

Brechen *Break* bricht, **Essen** *eat* isst, **Geben** *give* gibt, **Helfen** *help* hilft, **Nehmen** *take* nimmt, **Sprechen** *speak* spricht, **Vergessen** *forget* vergisst

essen			geben			nehmen		
ich	esse	<i>I eat</i>	gebe	<i>I give</i>		nehme	<i>I take</i>	
du	isst	<i>you eat</i>	gibst	<i>you give</i>		nimmst	<i>you take</i>	
er	isst	<i>he eats</i>	gibt	<i>he gives</i>		nimmt	<i>he takes</i>	
sie	isst	<i>she eats</i>	gibt	<i>she gives</i>		nimmt	<i>she takes</i>	
es	isst	<i>he/she/it eats</i>	gibt	<i>he/she/it gives</i>		nimmt	<i>he/she/it takes</i>	
wir	essen	<i>we eat</i>	geben	<i>we give</i>		nehmen	<i>we take</i>	
Sie	essen	<i>you eat</i>	geben	<i>you give</i>		nehmen	<i>you take</i>	
ihr	esst	<i>you eat</i>	gebt	<i>you give</i>		nehmt	<i>you take</i>	
sie	essen	<i>they eat</i>	geben	<i>they give</i>		nehmen	<i>they take</i>	
wer	isst	<i>who eats</i>	gibt	<i>who gives</i>		nimmt	<i>who takes</i>	

***Note:** In the second person singular (**du**), the conjugation ending -st is not added to the stem of the verb if the stem ends in -s, -ss, -z, or -ß. Only a -t is added to the stem*

Essen;	du isst	you eat
Heißen;	du heißt	your name is
Küssen;	du küsst	you kiss
Reizen;	du reizt	you annoy

Wer hilft Thomas? *Who is helping Thomas?*

Niemand hilft Thomas. *No one is helping Thomas.*

Unsere Tochter bricht sich den Finger.

Our daughter breaks her finger.

Herr Braun vergisst sein Geld. Mr.

Braun forgets his money.

Gern is used to say someone likes something/ doing something very much, while paired with the verb **haben**, it just means like.

Sprichst du **gern** Englisch?

*Do you **like** speaking English?*

Nein, ich spreche **gern** Deutsch.

*No, I **like** speaking German.*

Er trinkt **gern** Kaffee.

He likes drinking coffee.

Ich lerne gern Italienisch.

I like learning Italian.

Monika hat Simon gern.

Monika likes Simon.

Ich habe Bier nicht gern.

I don't like beer.

In some verbs vowel **-e-** in the stem shifts to **-ie-** in the irregular present tense conjugation in the second and third persons singular.

Befehlen *order* befiehlt, empfehlen *recommend* empfiehlt, geschehen *happen* geschieht, lesen *read* liest, sehen *see* sieht, stehlen *steal* stiehlt.

The verb **geschehen** is used only with third person subjects.

Es **geschieht** jeden Tag. *It happens every day.*

Was **geschieht** im Winter?

What happens in winter?

Hier **geschehen** keine Unfälle.

Accidents don't happen here.

	befehlen		sehen		stehlen	
ich	befehlen	<i>I order</i>	sehe	<i>I see</i>	stehle	<i>I steal</i>
du	befiehlest	<i>you order</i>	siehst	<i>you see</i>	stiehlest	<i>you steal</i>
er	befiehlt	<i>he orders</i>	sieht	<i>he sees</i>	stiehlt	<i>he steals</i>
sie	befiehlt	<i>she orders</i>	sieht	<i>she sees</i>	stiehlt	<i>she steals</i>
es	befiehlt	<i>he/she/it orders</i>	sieht	<i>he/she/it sees</i>	stiehlt	<i>he/she/it steals</i>
wir	befehlen	<i>we order</i>	sehen	<i>we see</i>	stehlen	<i>we steal</i>
Sie	befehlen	<i>you order</i>	sehen	<i>you see</i>	stehlen	<i>you steal</i>
ihr	befiehlt	<i>you order</i>	seht	<i>you see</i>	stiehlt	<i>you steal</i>
sie	befehlen	<i>they order</i>	sehen	<i>they see</i>	stehlen	<i>they steal</i>
wer	befiehlt	<i>who orders</i>	sieht	<i>who sees</i>	stiehlt	<i>who steals</i>

Er trinkt gern Kaffee und Milch.

He likes to drink coffee and milk.

Wer isst in der Küche?

Who is eating in the kitchen?

Ich empfehle die Bratwurst nicht.

I do not recommend the bratwurst.

Siehst du die Berge? *Do you see the mountains?*

Das sind die Alpen. *Those are the Alps.*

Niemand spricht gern Englisch.

No one likes speaking English.

Was vergessen sie? *What do they forget?*

Gibst du Thomas Geld?

Do you give Thomas money?
Sie hilft Simon und Monika.
She is helping Simon and Monika.
Martin nimmt meine Zeitung.
Martin takes my newspaper.
Der alte Mann stiehlt ein Auto.
The old man steals a car.
Esst ihr oft im Cafe? *Do you often eat in a café?*
Herr Lautrec kommt aus Frankreich.
Mr. Lautrec comes from France.
Wohin fährst du heute?
Where are you driving today?
Ich fahre heute in die Schweiz.
I am driving to Switzerland today.
Was geschieht heute?
What happens today?
Heute ist mein Geburtstag.
Today is my birthday.

The verb **warden** (*become, get*) has irregular conjugation as well. The vowel shift from **-e-** to **-i-** with a couple of spelling changes.

werden

ich	werde	<i>I become</i>
du	wirst	<i>you become</i>
er	wird	<i>he becomes</i>
sie	wird	<i>she becomes</i>
es	wird	<i>he/she/it becomes</i>
wir	werden	<i>we become</i>
Sie	werden	<i>you become</i>
ihr	werdet	<i>you become</i>
sie	werden	<i>they become</i>
wer	wird	<i>who becomes</i>

Note: When the stem of a verb ends in **-d** or **-t**, an extra **e** is added to the second person plural (**ihr**) and the third person singular (**er/sie/es**) stem of the verb. (Ihr werdet)

Ich werde Arzt. *I am becoming a doctor.*

Wird Ihre Frau auch Ärztin?

Is your wife also becoming a doctor?

Nein, sie wird Zahnärztin.

No, she is becoming a dentist.

Die Kinder werden sehr krank.

The children get very sick.

Werden sie heute wieder gesund?

Will they get well again today?

Meine Freundin wird nicht Lehrerin.
My girlfriend isn't becoming a teacher.
Sie wird Sängerin. *She is becoming a singer.*
Wann wird Martin wieder gesund?
When will Martin get well again?
Im Winter wird er wieder gesund.
He'll get well again in winter.
Werdet ihr Sportler? *Are you becoming athletes?*
Ja, wir werden Fußballspieler.
Yes, we are becoming soccer players.
Spielt ihr gut oder schlecht?
Do you play well or badly?
Wir spielen sehr gut. *We play very well.*

Note: *when something other than the subject begins a sentence, the verb precedes the subject.*

Heute **fahren wir** nach Hause.
We are driving home today.
Im Sommer **wohne ich** in Bonn.
I live in Bonn in the summer.

Impersonal **es** with **werden** as well as other verbs.

Es wird sehr kalt. *It is getting very cold.*

Heute wird es heiß. *It is getting hot today.*
Es wird warm. *It is getting warm.*
Es wird nicht kühl. *It is not getting cool.*
Wird es wieder regnerisch?
Is it getting rainy again?
Wird es wieder sonnig? *Is it getting sunny again?*
Wird es jetzt dunkel? *Is it getting dark?*
Nein, es wird jetzt hell. *No, it is getting light now.*
Es regnet. *It is raining.*
Schneit es? *Is it snowing?*
Es blitzt. *There is lightning.*
Es donnert wieder. *It is thundering again.*
Es geschieht jeden Tag. *It happens every day.*
Es riecht. *It smells.*

Wie viel ist zwei plus/und drei?
How much is two plus/and three?
Zwei plus/und drei ist fünf.
Two plus/and three is five.
Wie viel ist sieben plus/und vier?
How much is seven plus/and four?
Sieben plus/und vier ist elf.
Seven plus/and four is eleven.
Wie viel ist neunzehn weniger/minus sechs?
How much is 19 minus 6?

Neunzehn weniger/minus sechs ist dreizehn.

Nineteen minus six is thirteen.

Wie viel ist zwölf weniger/minus zwei?

How much is 12 minus 2?

Zwölf weniger/minus zwei ist zehn.

Twelve minus two is ten.

Ich habe ein Hemd. *I have one shirt.*

Wir haben drei Kinder. *We have three children.*

Wer hat zwanzig Euro? *Who has 20 euros?*

Wie viel ist zwei plus/und drei?

How much is two plus/and three?

Zwei plus/und drei ist fünf.

Two plus/and three is five.

Wie viel ist sieben plus/und vier?

How much is seven plus/and four?

Sieben plus/und vier ist elf.

Seven plus/and four is eleven.

Wie viel ist neunzehn weniger/minus sechs?

How much is 19 minus 6?

Neunzehn weniger/minus sechs ist dreizehn.

Nineteen minus six is thirteen.

Wie viel ist zwölf weniger/minus zwei?

How much is 12 minus 2?

Zwölf weniger/minus zwei ist zehn.

Twelve minus two is ten.

Vier plus eins ist fünf.

Four plus one is five.

Er hat ein Buch. *He has a/one book.*

Sie sieht eine Dame. *She sees a/one lady.*

Accusative Case: Direct Objects and Prepositions

Der-words and **ein-words** were **nominative** case (subject of a sentence) and the **accusative** case (direct object of a sentence). **Accusative case** is the Latin name for what is called the *objective case*. The Identify the answer of **what** and **whom** in the sentence. **Feminine** and **neuter** nouns are **identical** in both cases. Only **masculine** nouns make a change in the **accusative** case. Let's compare the **der-words** and **ein-words** in the two cases. Take note of how the masculine differs in them.

Der-Words	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative:	der Lehrer	die Lampe	das Kind
Accusative:	den Lehrer	die Lampe	das Kind
Ein-Words			
Nominative:	ein Stuhl	eine Tochter	ein Buch
Accusative:	einen Stuhl	eine Tochter	ein Buch

***Note:** When a masculine noun is used as a direct object, both **der**-words and **ein**-words change the ending to **-en**: **der** → **den** and **ein** → **einen**.*

Direct Object Nouns

To identify the **direct object**, ask **wen** (*whom*) or **was** (*what*) of the subject and verb in the sentence.

Mein Vater hat ein **Buch**. *My father has a book.*

Thomas sieht **seinen Freund**.

Thomas sees his friend.

The masculine direct object (**seinen Freund**) had an **-en** ending on the **der**-word **sein**. This occurs with all masculine nouns.

Thomas sieht **den Garten**. *Thomas sees the garden.*

Thomas sieht **einen Tisch**. *Thomas sees a table.*

Thomas sieht **meinen Onkel**.

Thomas sees my uncle.

As the verb that accompanies the direct object changes, the accusative case direct object remains

Thomas fotografiert **den Garten**.

Thomas photographs the garden.

Thomas kauft **einen Tisch**.

Thomas buys a table.

Thomas besucht **meinen Onkel**.

Thomas visits my uncle.

Was isst Tina? *What is Tina eating?*

Sie isst einen Apfel. *She is eating an apple.*

Warum essen die Männer keine Suppe?

Why aren't the men eating soup?

Wen besuchen Sie in Berlin?

Whom are you visiting in Berlin?

In Berlin besuche ich meinen Freund.

I'm visiting my friend in Berlin.

Er kauft ein Haus am Fluss.

He's buying a house on the river.

Was brauchst du? *What do you need?*

Ich brauche einen Bleistift. *I need a pencil.*

Transitive verbs verbs are followed by a direct object.

Infinitive	Sample Sentence	English
bauen	Ich baue ein Haus.	<i>I build a house.</i>
kennen	Wir kennen den Lehrer.	<i>We know the teacher.</i>
lehren	Frau Benz lehrt Klavier.	<i>Ms. Benz teaches piano.</i>
lernen	Welche Sprache lernt er?	<i>What language is he learning?</i>
schreiben	Schreibst du eine Postkarte?	<i>Are you writing a postcard?</i>
verkaufen	Tina verkauft ihre Bluse.	<i>Tina sells her blouse.</i>
verstehen	Sie versteht kein Wort.	<i>She doesn't understand a word.</i>

When a pronoun replaces a plural noun, it is always plural **sie** (*they*). This is true of both animates and inanimates: **die Kinder** → **sie**.

Das Kind liest ein Buch. *The child reads a book.*

Die Kinder lesen ein Buch.

The children read a book.

Direct Object Pronouns

	Singular	Plural
	Nominative/Accusative	Nominative/Accusative
First person:	ich <i>I</i>	mich <i>me</i> wir <i>we</i> uns <i>us</i>
Second person:	du <i>you</i>	dich <i>you</i> Sie <i>you</i> Sie <i>you</i> ihr <i>you</i> euch <i>you</i>
Third person:	er <i>he</i> sie <i>she</i> es <i>it</i>	ihn <i>him</i> sie <i>they</i> sie <i>them</i> sie <i>her</i> sie <i>they</i> sie <i>them</i> es <i>it</i> sie <i>they</i> sie <i>them</i>

Karl besucht mich. *Karl visits me.*

Sonja vergisst dich. *Sonja forgets you.*

Ich verkaufe sie. *I sell it.*

Sonja vergisst dich. *Sonja forgets you.*

Erik schreibt es. *Erik writes it.*

Sie fotografiert uns. *She photographs us.*

Niemand versteht Sie. *No one understands you.*

Die Frauen kaufen sie. *The women buy them.*

Lernen **Sie** es? *Are you learning **it**?*

Niemand kennt **mich**. *No one knows **me**.*

Martin verkauft **ihn**. *Martin sells **it**.*

Die Kinder besuchen **sie**.

*The children visit **her/them**. **

Die Touristen fotografieren **dich**.

*The tourists photograph **you**.*

Meine Freundin empfiehlt es.

My girlfriend recommends it.

Er gibt sie Thomas.

*He gives it/them to Thomas.**

Meine Cousine schreibt ihn. *My cousin is writing it.*

Wer trinkt es? *Who drinks it?*

Sechs Männer bauen ihn. *Six men are building it.*

Herr Keller kennt euch. *Mr. Keller knows you.*

Der Amerikaner versteht Sie nicht.

The American doesn't understand you.

Prepositions

They describe **place** and **time** of happening something. **Nouns** and **pronouns** that follow prepositions are in the **accusative** (objective) case. There is **no effect on nouns**, because they are identical in both cases. But **pronouns** use their **accusative** (objective) case forms after prepositions. they are called **accusative prepositions**. *Masculine nouns and pronouns* have to use their accusative case forms after the accusative prepositions.

Bis until, up to, **durch** through, **für** for, **gegen** against, **ohne** without, **um** around **wider** against (outdated).

Der Zug fährt durch den Tunnel.

The train goes through the tunnel.

Ich arbeite für meinen Onkel.

I work for my uncle.

Wir haben nichts gegen ihn.

We have nothing against him.

Der Mann kommt ohne sie.

The man comes without her.

Wir haben ein Geschenk für ihn.

We have a gift for him.

Warum bist du gegen mich?

Why are you against me?

Wer kommt um die Ecke?

Who is coming around the corner?

Die Kinder laufen um das Haus.

The children run around the house.

Ich **bitte** um ein Glas Milch.

I ask for a glass of milk.

Ich **bitte** um Hilfe. *I ask for help.*

Er **fragt**, wo Tina wohnt.

He asks where Tina lives.

*Ich **frage** Hans, wie sie heißt.*

*I **ask** Hans what her name is.*

Die Studentin **kommt** ohne Jacke.

*The student **comes** with a jacket.*

Haben sie etwas für uns?

*Do you **have** something for us?*

Ich **habe** nichts für euch. *I **have** nothing for you.*

Niemand **kommt** durch den Park.

*No one **is coming** through the park.*

Wir **singen** ohne ihn. *We **sing** without him.*

Wo **wohnt** Tina? Where **does** Tina **live**?

Hans, wie heißt sie? Hans, what is her name?

Masculine Plurals

For making plural nouns German uses the **-s** ending only with a few words. **Masculine nouns** form their plural by adding **-e**. If there is an umlaut vowel (**a**, **o**, **u**), it is sometimes added in the plural.

Auto=Autos, Kamera=Kameras, Laptop=Laptops,
Sofa=Sofas.

Der Bleistift/die Bleistifte	pencils
Der Brief/die Briefe	letters
Der Fluss/die Flüsse	rivers

Der Schuh/die Schuhe	shoes
Der Zug/die Züge	trains

Note: There are exceptions such as:

der Mann = die Männer in,

der Junge = die Jungen.

If a **masculine noun** ends in **-en**, **-el**, or **-er**, it requires no ending in the plural, but if there is an umlaut vowel (**a**, **o**, **u**), the umlaut is sometimes added to the noun.

der Boden/die Böden	the floors
der Bruder/die Brüder	the brothers
der Lehrer/die Lehrer	the teachers
der Mantel/die Mäntel	the coats
der Onkel/die Onkel	the uncles
der Wagen/die Wagen	the cars

Wie viele Briefe hast du?

How many letters do you have?

Ich habe zehn Briefe. I have 10 letters.

Wo sind die Züge? Where are the trains?

Die Züge sind am Bahnhof.

The trains are at the railroad station.

Ich frage ihn, wie viele Bleistifte er hat.
I ask him how many pencils he has.
Er fragt mich, wie viele Stühle da sind.
He asks me how many chairs are there.
Fragen wir den Lehrer. *Let's ask the teacher.*

If the subject of **kosten** is singular, the verb is singular. If it is plural, the verb is plural.

Wie viel kostet dieser Pullover?
How much does this sweater cost?
Er kostet zwanzig Dollar. *It costs 20 dollars.*
Wie viel kosten diese Pullover?
How much do these sweaters cost?
Ich weiß es nicht. Sie sind teuer.
I do not know. They are expensive.
Wie viel **kostet** der Bleistift?
How much does the pencil cost?
Er kostet vier Euro. *It costs 4 euros.*
Wie viel **kosten** Bleistifte?
How much do pencils cost?
Bleistifte sind nicht teuer.
Pencils are not expensive.
Ich weiß es nicht, aber Bleistifte sind billig.
I do not know, but pencils are cheap. Wie viele

Briefe schreibt sie? How many letters is she writing?

Sie schreibt elf Briefe. *She is writing 11 letters.*

Arbeiten Männer schneller? *Do men work faster?*

Nein, Männer arbeiten nicht schneller.

No, men do not work faster.

Wie viel kosten diese Pullover?

How much do these sweaters cost?

Sie kosten sechzehn Euro.

They cost 16 euros.

Sind Autos billig oder teuer?

Are cars cheap or expensive?

Diese Autos sind teuer.

These cars are expensive.

Aber diese Autos sind billig.

But these cars are cheap.

Sind jene Stühle klein? *Are those chairs small?*

Nein, jene Stühle sind groß.

No, those chairs are big.

Jungen sind jung, und Männer sind alt.

Boys are young, and men are old.

In **past tense** the stem of the verb adds the suffix **-te**. get conjugational endings that are similar but not identical to the present tense conjugational endings.

Infinitive	Stem	Past Tense	
spielen	spiel-	spielte	<i>played</i>
fragen	frag-	fragte	<i>asked</i>
machen	mach-	machte	<i>made, did</i>
sagen	sag-	sagte	<i>said</i>
besuchen	besuch-	besuchte	<i>visited</i>
suchen	such-	suchte	<i>looked for, sought</i>
kaufen	kauf-	kaufte	<i>bought</i>

	spielen		sagen		lernen
ich	spielte	<i>I played</i>	sagte	<i>I said</i>	lernte <i>I learned</i>
du	spieltest	<i>you played</i>	sagtest	<i>you said</i>	lerntest <i>you learned</i>
er, sie, es	spielte	<i>he played</i>	sagte	<i>he said</i>	lernte <i>he learned</i>
wir	spielten	<i>we played</i>	sagten	<i>we said</i>	lernten <i>we learned</i>
ihr	spieltet	<i>you played</i>	sagtet	<i>you said</i>	lerntet <i>you learned</i>
Sie	spielten	<i>you played</i>	sagten	<i>you said</i>	lernten <i>you learned</i>
sie	spielten	<i>they played</i>	sagten	<i>they said</i>	lernten <i>they learned</i>

If the **subject** of a sentence is a **singular** noun, it forms the past tense in the third person singular (**er**,

sie, es). If it is plural, it forms the past tense in the third person plural (**sie pl.**).

Der Mann spielte. *the man played*

Die Männer spielten. *the men played*

Viele Jungen spielten Fußball.

Many boys played soccer.

Viele Kinder lernten Deutsch.

Many children learned German.

Ich kaufte einen Volkswagen/VW (fow-vay).

I bought a Volkswagen/VW.

Wer kaufte diese Blumen?

Who bought these flowers?

Martin verkaufte sein Fahrrad.

Martin sold his bicycle.

Was verkauften deine Schwestern?

What did your sisters sell?

Der alte Mann sagte nichts.

The old man said nothing.

Was sagten sie? *What did they say?*

Ich suchte eine Bibliothek.

I was looking for a library.

Was machtet ihr gestern?

What did you do yesterday?

Wir besuchten unsere Freundinnen.

We visited our girlfriends.

Wohin reiste die neue Diplomatin?

Where did the young diplomat (f.) travel?

If the stem of an infinitive ends in **-t** or **-d**, an extra **e** is added to the past tense suffix.

	arbeiten (<i>work</i>)	reden (<i>talk</i>)
ich	arbeitete	redete
du	arbeitetest	redetest
er	arbeitete	redete
wir	arbeiteten	redeten
ihr	arbeitetet	redetet
Sie	arbeiteten	redeten
sie	arbeiteten	redeten

Adverbs for the Past Tense : We know that adverbs **jetzt** (*now*) and **heute** (*today*) are adverbs in present tense. Some Adverbs showing past are:

Gestern	yesterday,
Vor einer Minute	<i>a minute ago,</i>
Vor zwei Minuten	<i>two minutes ago</i>

Vor fünfzehn Minuten	<i>15 minutes ago</i>
Vor einer Woche	<i>a week ago</i>
Vor einem Monat	<i>a month ago</i>
Vor drei Jahren	<i>three years ago</i>
Am Vormittag	<i>in the morning</i>
Am Mittag	<i>at noon</i>
Am Nachmittag	<i>in the afternoon</i>
Am Abend	<i>in the evening</i>
In der Nacht	<i>at night</i>

Gestern spielte Monika Fußball.

Yesterday, Monika played soccer.

Ich wohnte da **vor sechs Jahren**.

I lived there six years ago.

Wohin reiste sie **vor einer Woche**?

Where did she travel a week ago?

Vor drei Jahren wohnten wir in Amerika.

Three years ago we lived in America.

Gestern zeigte er Thomas sein Fahrrad.

Yesterday he showed Thomas his bike.

Vor vier Jahren lehrte er in dieser Schule.

Four years ago, he taught in this school.

Gestern schneite es wieder.

Yesterday it snowed again.

Gestern blitzte und donnerte es.

There were lightning and thunderyesterday.

Making questions

The **verb** precedes the **subject** in questions even an interrogative word begins the question.

Question: Wohnten Sie zu Hause? *Did you live at home?*

Interrogative: Wo wohnten Sie vor zwei Jahren?
Where did you live two years ago?

Interrogative words we know are:

Wann when, **Warum** why, **Was** what, **Wen** whom, **Wer** who, **Wie** how, **WO** where, **Woher** (from) where, **Wohin** where (to).

Wann kommt der nächste Zug?

When is the next train coming?

Warum spielte er Tennis? *Why did he play tennis?*

Er spielte Tennis, denn er ist Sportler.

He played tennis because he's an athlete.

Was zeigte sie Hans? *What did she show Hans?*

Wen fragten Sie? *Whom did you ask?*

Wer antwortete? *Who answered?*

Wie heißt die neue Studentin?

What is the new student's name?

Wo bauten sie die Bibliothek?
Where did they build the library?
 Woher kommt der alte Herr?
Where does the old gentleman come from?
 Wohin reiste seine Familie? *Where did his family travel?*
 Was möchten Sie heute, Frau Benz?
What would you like today, Ms. Benz?
Warum ist Sonja zu Hause? **Why** is Sonja at home?
 Sie ist zu Hause, **denn** sie ist krank.
She is at home because she is sick.
Warum wohnten sie in Bonn?
Why did they live in Bonn?
 Sie wohnten in Bonn, **denn** ihr Vater wohnte da.
They lived in Bonn because their father lived there.
 Warum schneite es wieder? *Why did it snow again?*
 Es schneite wieder, **denn** es ist Winter
It snowed again because it is winter.

The verb form **möchte** (would like) can be followed by **direct objects** or other **verbs**. With past tense ending but the meaning of the verb is not exactly a past tense:

ich möchte,
du möchtest,
er möchte,
wir möchten,
ihr möchtet,

Sie möchten,

sie möchten

Möchtest du heute ein Geschenk?

Would you like a gift today?

Möchte sie nächste Woche ein Fahrrad?

Would she like a bike next week?

Tina möchte eine neue Bluse.

Tina would like a new blouse.

Wir möchten Brot und Butter.

We would like bread and butter.

Möchten Sie einen Bleistift?

Would you like a pencil?

Tina möchte nach Berlin reisen.

Tina would like to travel to Berlin.

Wir möchten Kaffee und Tee trinken

We would like to drink coffee and tea.

Möchtest du Radio hören?

Would you like to listen to the radio?

The interrogative used in a question depends upon the element in a sentence that it asks about. If it asks about a person, the interrogative is **wer** or **wen**. If it asks about a thing, it is **was**. If it asks about a moment in time, it is **wann**, and so on.

Vor einem Jahr wohnte der Mann in Berlin?

Did the man live in Berlin a year ago?

Wann wohnte der Mann in Berlin?

When *did the man live in Berlin?*

Wer wohnte vor einem Jahr in Berlin?

Who *lived in Berlin a year ago?*

Wo wohnte der Mann vor einem Jahr?

Where *did the man live a year ago?*

Most feminine nouns change to the plural by adding **-n** or **-en**. Nouns that end in the suffix **-in** add the ending **-nen** in the plural. Two important exceptions to the use of **-en** to form the plural are die Mutter = **die Mütter** and die Tochter = **die Töchter**. They use the definite article **die** in the plural with **plural verb**.

Die Blume	die Blumen	<i>the flowers</i>
Die Frau	die Frauen	<i>the women</i>
Die Lampe	die Lampen	<i>the lamps</i>
Die Schwester	die Schwestern	<i>the sisters</i>
Die Tante	die Tanten	<i>the aunts</i>
die Freundin	die Freundinnen	
die Amerikanerin	die Amerikanerinnen.	

Die Blumen **sind** sehr schön.

*The flowers **are** very pretty.*

Die Touristinnen **warteten** an der Ecke.

*The tourists **waited** on the corner.*

Zwei Wochen **sind** vierzehn Tage.

Two weeks are 14 days.

Meine Schwestern **sind** sehr jung.

*My sisters **are** very young.*

Wann **kommen** Ihre Töchter?

*When **are** your daughters **coming**?*

Diese Wohnungen sind sehr klein.

These apartments are very little.

Wo sind die Zeitungen?

Where are the newspapers?

Wie alt sind diese Uhren?

How old are these clocks?

The word **das** (that) is frequently used followed by a verb (often **ist**) and a variety of **adjectives** or **adverbs** and is a response to something just stated.

Heute schneit es wieder.

It's snowing again today.

Das stimmt. *That's right.*

Das stimmt nicht. *That's not right.*

Das macht nichts. *That doesn't matter.*

Das geht. *That will work. That's all right.*

Das ist egal. *That doesn't matter.*

Das ist wahr. *That's true.*

Das ist nicht wahr. *That's not true.*

Many professions and occupations that are described by a masculine noun can most often add the **-in** suffix to make it feminine. Its plural would, of course, be the ending **-nen**.

Masculine	Feminine	
der Arzt	die Ärztin	<i>doctor</i>
der Diplomat	die Diplomatin	<i>diplomat</i>
der Engländer	die Engländerin	<i>Englishwoman</i>
der Italiener	die Italienerin	<i>Italian</i>
der Mechaniker	die Mechanikerin	<i>mechanic</i>
der Polizist	die Polizistin	<i>police officer</i>
der Richter	die Richterin	<i>judge</i>
der Sänger	die Sängerin	<i>singer</i>
der Schaffner	die Schaffnerin	<i>conductor</i>
der Schüler	die Schülerin	<i>pupil</i>

Irregular Past Tense

The irregular past tense most often does not use the -te suffix.

Infinitive: kommen, singen, trinken, sehen
come, see, drink, sing

Past: **kam, sang, trank, sah**

Came, sang, drank, saw

Essen **aß** *eat/ate*

Fahren **fuhr** *drive/drove*

Finden **fand** *find/found*

Fliegen **flog** *fly/flew*

Gehen **ging** *go/went*

Heißen **hieß** *call, be named/called, was named*

Helfen **half** *help/helped*

Laufen **lief** *run/ran*

Lesen **las** *read/read*

Schreiben **schrieb** *write/wrote*

Sprechen **sprach** *speak/spoke*

Tun **tat** *do/did*

Verstehen **verstand** *understand/understood*

With conjugational endings:

essen			lesen		schreiben	
ich	aß	<i>I ate</i>	las	<i>I read</i>	schrieb	<i>I wrote</i>
du	aßt	<i>you ate</i>	last	<i>you read</i>	schriebst	<i>you wrote</i>
er	aß	<i>he ate</i>	las	<i>he read</i>	schrieb	<i>he wrote</i>
wir	aßen	<i>we ate</i>	lasen	<i>we read</i>	schrieben	<i>we wrote</i>
ihr	aßt	<i>you ate</i>	last	<i>you read</i>	schriebt	<i>you wrote</i>
Sie	aßen	<i>you ate</i>	lasen	<i>you read</i>	schrieben	<i>you wrote</i>
sie	aßen	<i>they ate</i>	lasen	<i>they read</i>	schrieben	<i>they wrote</i>

Ich fand zehn Euro auf der Straße.

I found 10 euros on the street.

Er sprach Russisch. He spoke Russian.

Wir verstanden kein Wort.

We did not understand a word.

Die Kinder liefen durch den Garten.

The children ran through the garden.

Sie bat um ein Glas Wasser.

She asked for a glass of water.

Trank sie kein Bier oder Wein?

Didn't she drink any beer or wine?

Warum schrieben Sie diesen Brief?

Why did you write this letter?

Wer kam an die Tür?

Who came to the door?
Der Briefträger kam mit einer Postkarte.
The letter carrier came with a postcard.
Sangen die Kinder schön?
Did the children sing nicely?
Was tat er? *What did he do?*
Er bekam einen Brief.
He received a letter.

Note: When the verb **kommen** adds the prefix **be-**, it becomes **bekommen**. Although **kommen** means *come*, **bekommen** means *receive* or *get*. Just as the past tense of **kommen** is **kam**, the past tense of **bekommen** is **bekam** (*received, got*). This use of prefixes is common in German as well as in English.

Am Vormittag aßen wir in der Küche.
In the morning we ate in the kitchen.
Am Mittag ging er nach Hause.
He went home at noon.
Was tatet ihr am Nachmittag?
What did you do in the afternoon?
Am Abend lasen wir die Zeitung.
In the evening we read the newspaper.

In der Nacht kam ein Mann an die Tür.
At night a man came to the door.
Gestern flogen die Touristen nach Moskau.
Yesterday the tourists flew to Moscow.
Vor einer Woche fand er seinen Pass wieder.
A week ago he found his passport again.
Es kostete zweihundert Euro pro Monat.
It cost 200 euros per month.
Die Mäntel kosteten fünfundvierzig Euro.
The coats cost 45 euros.
Martin brauchte achthundert Dollar.
Martin needed 800 dollars.
Vierundneunzig minus fünf ist neunundachtzig.
Ninety-four minus five is eighty-nine.
Der Polizist ist vierundzwanzig Jahre alt.
The police officer is 24 years old.
Ich habe viertausend Euro in der Bank.
I have 4,000 euros in the bank.
Dreiunddreißig plus elf ist vierundvierzig.
Thirty-three plus eleven is forty-four.
Wann sind Sie geboren?
When were you born?
Ich bin im Jahre neunzehnhundertneunundachtzig
geboren. *I was born in (the year) 1989.*
Ich bin im Jahre zweitausendeins geboren.

I was born in (the year) 2001.
Sie ist neunzehnhundertsiebzig geboren.
She was born in 1970.
Das Kind ist im Jahre 2009 geboren.
The child was born in (the year) 2009.
Die Zwillinge sind 1999 geboren.
The twins were born in 1999.
Er kam im Jahre 2012 nach Amerika.
He came to America in (the year) 2012.
Sie besuchte 2014 ihre Eltern in Bonn.
In 2014 she visited her parents in Bonn.
Er ist im Oktober geboren. *He was born in October.*
Erik besuchte Monika im Juli.
Erik visited Monika in July.
Im Dezember arbeitete ich in Berlin.
In December I worked in Berlin.
Im Herbst ist es oft kühl. *In the fall, it is often cool.*
Im Winter schneit es. *It snows in the winter.*
Im Frühling regnet es sehr oft.
In the spring it rains very often.
Am Montag ging ich zur Schule.
On Monday I went to school.
Was tut ihr am Mittwoch?
What are you doing on Wednesday?

Am Samstag kam Marianne nach Hause.
Marianne came home on Saturday.
Vor einem Jahr wohnte ich in Spanien.
A year ago I lived in Spain.

Vor einem Tag bekam ich seinen Brief.
A day ago I received his letter.
Vor einer Woche besuchten wir sie.
A week ago we visited them.
Vor einem Monat flog sie nach Polen.
A month ago she flew to Poland.

Wessen Geburtstag ist am Sonnabend?
Whose birthday is on Saturday?
Vor einem Monat bekam ich diese Postkarte/
Ansichtskarte.

A month ago I received this postcard/ picture postcard.

Note: im and am are contractions of a prepositions in dem (in the) and an dem (on the, at the) others are: In das ins (into the), In dem im (in the), Zu dem zum (to the) Zu der zur (to the)

Wie alt ist Ihre Frau? *How old is your wife?*

Meine Frau ist einunddreißig Jahre alt.

My wife is 31 years old.

Wie alt ist die Burg?

How old is the castle?

Die Burg ist eintausendzwanzig Jahre alt.

The castle is 1,020 years old.

Wie alt ist das Baby? *How old is the baby?*

Das Baby ist sechs Monate alt.

The baby is six months old.

Wie alt ist euer Haus? *How old is your house?*

Unser Haus ist zwei Jahre alt.

Our house is two years old.

The simplest form of **neuter plural** is with nouns that end in the diminutive suffixes **-chen** and **-lein**. neuter plurals use the definite article **die**, and when the article suggests an indefinite meaning, no article is used. If **der**-words or **ein**-words modify plurals, they have an **-e** ending. Neuter nouns that are of one syllable tend to form the plural with the ending **-er**. On less frequent occasions, nouns of more than one syllable use this ending as well. If the noun has an umlaut vowel (a, o, u), there is a tendency to add an umlaut in the plural.

Neuter	Plural	
das Mädchen	die Mädchen	<i>the girls</i>
kein Mädchen	keine Mädchen	<i>no girls</i>
ein Mädchen	Mädchen	<i>girls</i>
das Röslein	die Röslein	<i>the little roses</i>
dieses Röslein	diese Röslein	<i>these little roses</i>
ein Röslein	Röslein	<i>little roses</i>

Neuter	Plural	
das Bild	die Bilder	<i>the pictures</i>
das Buch	die Bücher	<i>the books</i>
das Gesicht	die Gesichter	<i>the faces</i>
das Haus	die Häuser	<i>the houses</i>
das Kind	die Kinder	<i>the children</i>
das Land	die Länder	<i>the lands, countries</i>

Some of the neuter plurals that break the rules are:

das Bett	die Betten	<i>the beds</i>
das Drama	die Dramen	<i>the dramas</i>
das Gebäude	die Gebäude	<i>the buildings</i>
das Hemd	die Hemden	<i>the shirts</i>
das Sweatshirt	die Sweatshirts	<i>the sweatshirts</i>
das Theater	die Theater	<i>the theaters</i>

In the **dative case** all nouns make a change, and that change is identical with **der**-words or **ein**-words.

Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Plural
dem Freund	der Freundin	dem Haus	den Lampen
einem Freund	keiner Freundin	diesem Haus	jenen Lampen
ihrem Freund	eurer Freundin	seinem Haus	meinen Lampen
unserem Freund	jeder Freundin	einem Haus	diesen Lampen

Indirect object

Kaufen Sie **dem Kind** Eis?

*Are you buying **the child** ice cream?*

Ich gebe der Kellnerin das Geld.

I give the waitress the money.

Wir senden den Mädchen zwanzig Euro.

We send the girls 20 euros.

Wir schicken Hans nach Hause.

We send Hans home.

Dative pronouns are used as indirect objects just like nouns.

Nominative	Accusative	Dative
ich	mich	mir
du	dich	dir
er	ihn	ihm
sie s.	sie	ihr
es	es	ihm
wir	uns	uns
ihr	euch	euch
Sie	Sie	Ihnen
sie pl.	sie	ihnen
wer	wen	wem

Was geben Sie Ihrem Sohn?

What are you giving your son?

Ich gebe ihm drei Geschenke.

I am giving him three gifts.

Marianne sendet/schickt mir ein Nachricht.

Marianne sends me a message.

Wem sendet ihr diesen Brief?

To whom are you sending this letter?

Wir senden dir diesen Brief.

We are sending you this letter.

Karl kaufte ihr ein neues Kleid.

Karl bought her a new dress.

Warum schickten Sie uns keine Bücher?

Why didn't you send us any books?

Die Kellnerin bringt euch drei Glas Bier.

The waitress brings you three glasses of beer.

Ich möchte Ihnen ein paar Blumen schenken.

I would like to give you a couple of flowers.

Was möchtest du ihnen schicken?

What would you like to send them?

Prepositons of dative case

Nouns and pronouns that follow these prepositions are in the dative case.

aus out, from, **außer** except, **bei** by, at, at the home of, **gegenüber** across from, opposite, **mit** with, **nach** after, **seit** since, **von** from, of, **zu** to, to a person's home.

Er kommt aus der Schule.

He comes out of the school.

Der Mann sprach mit ihnen.

The man spoke with them.

Was tut ihr nach dem Konzert?
What are you doing after the concert?
Thomas wohnt jetzt bei mir.
Thomas now lives with me.
Wohnen Sie noch bei Ihren Eltern?
Are you still living with your parents?
Gegenüber dem Bahnhof steht das Rathaus.
City hall is across from the railroad station.
Nach der Schule gingen wir ins Kino.
After school we went to the movies.
Der Tourist fragte nach ihm.
The tourist asked about (after) him.
Ich studiere seit Oktober in Hamburg.
I've been studying in Hamburg since October.
Er ist seit dem Unfall im Krankenhaus.
He has been in the hospital since the accident.
Sie gibt mir ein Stück von dem Kuchen.
She gives me a piece of the cake.
Mein Vater ging spät zur Arbeit.
My father went to work late.
Frau Benz fährt zum Arzt.
Ms. Benz drives to the doctor.
Niemand hilft mir außer dir.
No one helps me except you.

We say : arbeiten bei (work at), **fahren/fliegen mit** (travel/fly by), **reden von** (talk about), **sprechen von** (speak about), **wohnen bei** (live at someone's home).

Ich helfe meinem Vater im Garten.

I help my father in the garden.

Er möchte ihr helfen. *He would like to help her.*

Wir glauben dem Dieb nicht.

We do not believe the thief.

Warum glaubst du ihnen?

Why do you believe them?

Past Tense of *Haben, sein, werden*

	haben		sein		werden	
ich	hatte	<i>I had</i>	war	<i>I was</i>	wurde	<i>I became, got</i>
du	hattest	<i>you had</i>	warst	<i>you were</i>	wurdest	<i>you became, got</i>
er	hatte	<i>he had</i>	war	<i>he was</i>	wurde	<i>he became, got</i>
wir	hatten	<i>we had</i>	waren	<i>we were</i>	wurden	<i>we became, got</i>
ihr	hattet	<i>you had</i>	wart	<i>you were</i>	wurdet	<i>you became, got</i>
Sie	hatten	<i>you had</i>	waren	<i>you were</i>	wurden	<i>you became, got</i>
sie pl.	hatten	<i>they had</i>	waren	<i>they were</i>	wurden	<i>you became, got</i>
wer	hatte	<i>who had</i>	war	<i>who was</i>	wurde	<i>who became, got</i>

Ich hatte leider keine Zeit.

Unfortunately, I didn't have any time.

Hattest du genug Geld?

Did you have enough money?

Er hatte die neue Studentin gern.

He liked the new student.

Vor einem Jahr hatten wir ein Haus in den Alpen.

A year ago we had a house in the Alps.

Sie war eine sehr gute Freundin von mir.

She was a very good friend of mine.

Wart ihr noch am Nachmittag in der Bank?

Were you still in the bank in the afternoon?

Am Montag war es kalt und regnerisch.

It was cold and rainy on Monday.

Wann wurden Sie Physiklehrer?

When did you become a physics teacher?

Wann wurden sie so groß?

When did they get so big?

Das Wetter wurde immer schlechter.

The weather got worse and worse.

Es war kalt, und das Wasser wurde zu Eis.

It was cold, and the water turned into ice.

Wissen and kennen = know; are irregular in present tense.

ich weiß	<i>I know</i>	wir wissen	<i>we know</i>
du weißt	<i>you know</i>	ihr wisst	<i>you know</i>
er weiß	<i>he knows</i>	Sie wissen	<i>you know</i>
wer weiß	<i>who knows</i>	sie wissen	<i>they know</i>

ich kenne	<i>I know</i>	wir kennen	<i>we know</i>
du kennst	<i>you know</i>	ihr kennt	<i>you know</i>
er kennt	<i>he knows</i>	Sie kennen	<i>you know</i>
wer kennt	<i>who knows</i>	sie kennen	<i>they know</i>

Wissen Sie, wo der Bahnhof ist?

Do you know where the railroad station is?

Nein, ich weiß es leider nicht.

No, unfortunately, I don't.

Kennst du den Sportler auf dem Fußballfeld?

Do you know the athlete on the soccer field?

Ja, ich kenne ihn. Er ist ein Freund von mir.

Yes, I know him. He's a friend of mine.

Onkel Heinz weiß nicht, wann das Kind geboren ist.

Uncle Heinz doesn't know when the child was born.

Wisst ihr, wie die Frau krank wurde?

Do you know how the woman became sick?

Past tense **wissen** and **kennen** are also irregular:

wissen

ich wusste	<i>I knew</i>	wir wussten	<i>we knew</i>
du wusstest	<i>you knew</i>	ihr wusstet	<i>you knew</i>
er wusste	<i>he knew</i>	Sie wussten	<i>you knew</i>
wer wusste	<i>who knew</i>	sie wussten	<i>they knew</i>

kennen

ich kannte	<i>I knew</i>	wir kannten	<i>we knew</i>
du kannst	<i>you knew</i>	ihr kanntet	<i>you knew</i>
er kannte	<i>he knew</i>	Sie kannten	<i>you knew</i>
wer kannte	<i>who knew</i>	sie kannten	<i>they knew</i>

Er wusste nicht, wer seinen Volkswagen kaufte.

He didn't know who bought his Volkswagen.

Vor zehn Jahren kannte ich den Mann gut.

Ten years ago I knew the man well.

Wussten Sie, wie alt Frau Keller war?

Did you know how old Ms. Keller was?

Wer kannte diese arme Frau?

Who knew this old woman?

Er ist tot? Ich wusste es nicht!

He's dead? I didn't know that!

Along with **helfen** and **glauben**, there is a short list of other high-frequency dative verbs. Their nouns must be in dative case.

Antworten answer, reply, **danken** thank, **dienen** serve, **folgen** follow, **gehören** belong to, **gratulieren** congratulate, **imponieren** impress, **passen** fit, **passieren** happen, **vertrauen** trust.

Ich möchte Ihnen danken. *I would like to thank you.*

Wir gratulieren den Gewinnern.

We congratulate the winners.

Was ist ihm passiert? *What happened to him?*

Thomas vertraut dem Mann nicht.

Thomas doesn't trust the man.

Sie antwortet dem Lehrer auf seine Frage.

She replies to the teacher's question.

Das dient einer guten Sache.

That serves a good cause.

Ein kleiner Hund folgte mir nach Hause.

A little dog followed me home.

Diese Armbanduhr gehört einem Freund von mir.

This wristwatch belongs to a friend of mine.

Wie kann ich dem hübschen Mädchen imponieren?

How can I impress the beautiful girl?

Der braune Anzug passt dir gar nicht.

The brown suit doesn't fit you at all.
Wir möchten unserem Gastgeber danken.
We would like to thank our host.
Ich gratulierte ihr zum Geburtstag.
I congratulated her on her birthday.
Nichts passierte deiner Katze.
Nothing happened to your cat.
Wie kann man einem Dieb vertrauen?
How can one (you) trust a thief?

When the desired meaning is people in general use
Man (One you) NOT **du**, **ihr**, or **Sie**.

Man kann im Wartesaal sitzen.
One/You can sit in the waiting room.
Warum braucht **man** so viel Geld?
Why does one/do you need so much money?
Man studiert oft in der Bibliothek.
One often studies/You often study in the library.

Use reflexive pronoun **sich** (oneself) instead of third person pronouns. Three verbs that use this concept are **putzen** (brush, polish), **brechen** (break), and **waschen** (wash).

Ich **putze** mir die Zähne. *I brush my teeth.*
Du **putzt** dir die Zähne. *You brush your teeth.*
Er **putzt** sich die Zähne. *He brushes his teeth.*
Sie **putzt** sich die Zähne. *She brushes her teeth*

Man **bricht** sich den Arm.
One breaks/You break one's/your arm.
Sie **brechen** sich den Finger. *You break your finger.*
Du **brichst** dir das Bein. *You break your leg.*
Monika **bricht** sich den Zeh.
Monika breaks her toe.

Ich **wasche** mir das Gesicht. *I wash my face.*
Sie **wäscht** sich die Haare. *She washes her hair.*
Wir **waschen** uns die Hände. *We wash our hands*

Aber (*but*), **oder** (*or*), **und** (*and*), and **sondern** (*but*)
combine two sentences into one .
Er fragte sie wieder, **aber** sie antwortete nicht.
He asked her again, but she didn't answer.
Möchtest du ins Café gehen, **oder** möchtest du
etwas kochen?
*Would you like to go to a cafe, or would you like to
cook something?*
Sonja ist Krankenschwester **und** Tina ist Lehrerin.

*Sonja is a nurse, **and** Tina is a teacher.*

*Er ist kein Pilot, **sondern** er ist Flugbegleiter.*

*He's not a pilot, **but** (**rather**) he is a flight attendant.*

Können (*can, be able to*) and **müssen** (*must, have to*). They are often combined with other verbs to describe someone's ability and follow the pattern of **wissen**.

Ich kann dem Mann helfen.

I can help the man. (ability)

Ich muss dem Mann helfen.

I have to help the man. (obligation)

können

ich kann	<i>I can, am able to</i>	wir können	<i>we can, are able to</i>
du kannst	<i>you can, are able to</i>	ihr könnt	<i>you can, are able to</i>
er kann	<i>he can, is able to</i>	Sie können	<i>you can, are able to</i>
wer kann	<i>who can, is able to</i>	sie können	<i>they can, are able to</i>

müssen

ich muss	<i>I must, have to</i>	wir müssen	<i>we must, have to</i>
du musst	<i>you must, have to</i>	ihr müsst	<i>you must, have to</i>
er muss	<i>he must, has to</i>	Sie müssen	<i>you must, have to</i>
wer muss	<i>who must, has to</i>	sie müssen	<i>they must, have to</i>

Ich kann meine Bücher nicht finden.

I can't find my books.

Du musst sie im Keller suchen.

You have to look for them in the basement.

Müssen alle Jungen Tennis oder Fußball spielen?

Do all the boys have to play tennis or soccer?

Tennis, ja. Aber nur Erik muss Fußball spielen.

Tennis, yes. But only Erik has to play soccer.

Können die Mädchen hören, was wir sagen?

Can the girls hear what we're saying?

Hoffentlich können sie nichts hören. *I hope*

(hopefully) they can't hear anything.

Ich habe viel Hausarbeit. Ich muss heute Abend arbeiten.

I have a lot of homework. I have to work (study) this evening.

Könnt ihr morgen Nachmittag mit mir in die Stadt fahren?

Can you go into the city with me tomorrow afternoon?

Nein, morgen müssen wir zu Hause bleiben.

No, tomorrow we have to stay home.

Was müsst ihr tun? *What do you have to do?*

Das ist ein Geheimnis. Es muss eine Überraschung sein.

It's a secret. It has to be a surprise.

In the past tense

können

ich konnte	<i>I could, were able to</i>	wir konnten	<i>we could, were able to</i>
du konntest	<i>you could, were able to</i>	ihr konntet	<i>you could, were able to</i>
er konnte	<i>he could, was able to</i>	Sie konnten	<i>you could, were able to</i>
wer konnte	<i>who could, was able to</i>	sie konnten	<i>they could, were able to</i>

müssen

ich musste	<i>I had to</i>	wir mussten	<i>we had to</i>
du musstest	<i>you had to</i>	ihr musstet	<i>you had to</i>
er musste	<i>he had to</i>	Sie mussten	<i>you had to</i>
wer musste	<i>who had to</i>	sie mussten	<i>they had to</i>

Ich **kann** ihm helfen.

I can help him/ I am able to help him.

Ich **konnte** ihm helfen.

I could help him / I was able to help him.

Ich **muss** ihm helfen.

I must/have to help him.

Ich **musste** ihm helfen.

I had to help him.

Es tut is impersonal expression that uses **es** as its subject and the verb **tun** (do).

Es tut mir leid. *I'm sorry.*

Tut es Ihnen leid? *Are you sorry?*

Es tut ihm leid. *He is sorry.*

Es tat ihr leid. *She was sorry.*

Es tut mir weh. *It hurts me.*

Es tut ihnen weh. *It hurts them.*

Tut es dem Jungen weh? *Does it hurt the boy?*

Future Tense

Morgen fahren wir in die Stadt.

Tomorrow we are driving to the city.

Hast du nächste Woche Zeit?

Do you have time next week?

Am Wochenende bleiben sie zu Hause.

They are staying home on the weekend.

Im Winter fliege ich ans Mittelmeer.

In winter I am flying to the Mediterranean.

Am Donnerstag kommt sie endlich an.

On Thursday she finally arrives.

Morgen haben die Zwillinge Geburtstag.

The twins have their birthday tomorrow.

Wann reisen Sie nach Südamerika? Im Oktober?

When do you travel to South America? In October?

Hoffentlich kann ich in München studieren.

I hope I can study in Munich.

Nächsten Monat kaufe ich einen neuen Sportwagen.

Next month I'm buying a new sports car.

Übermorgen gehen wir in den Bergen klettern.

We are going climbing in the mountains the day after tomorrow.

Nächstes Jahr feiern sie ihren zwanzigsten

Hochzeitstag.

Next year they celebrate their twentieth anniversary.

Um Viertel nach neun startet der neue Jumbo-Jet.

The new jumbo jet takes off at nine-fifteen.

Du musst bis elf Uhr zu Hause sein.

You have to be home by eleven o'clock.

Bald kaufen wir ein Haus im Norden.

We're buying a house in the north soon.

Wohin laufen die Schüler nach der Schule?

Where do the students run after school?

Future Tense Using *werden*

The verb **werden** is conjugated in the present tense when it is the auxiliary of the future tense. When it is accompanied by an infinitive *at the end of the*

sentence, the future tense is formed, and the translation of **werden** is *shall* or *will*. Remember:

Ich werde wir werden

Du wirst ihr werdet

Er wird Sie werden

Sie wird sie werden

Es wird

Ich **werde** meine Verwandten in Bremen besuchen.

*I **will** visit my relatives in Bremen.*

Wirst du diesen Ausländern helfen?

***Will** you help these foreigners?*

Was **wird** Felix im Keller finden?

*What **will** Felix find in the cellar?*

Wir **werden** hier im Garten bleiben.

*We **will** stay here in the garden.*

Werdet ihr im Hotel übernachten?

***Will** you stay overnight in a hotel?*

Wann **werden** Sie zurückkommen?

*When **will** you come back?*

Nächste Woche werden sie nach Rom ziehen.

Next week they will move to Rome.

Übermorgen wird Angelika an die Uni gehen.

Angelika will go to college the day after tomorrow.

Meine Nichte wird das ganze Jahr im Osten verbringen.

My niece will spend the whole year in the east.

Heute werde ich hier bleiben und arbeiten.
Today I will stay here and study.
Wann wirst du wieder genug Zeit haben?
When will you have enough time again?
Werden Sie den Winter im Süden verbringen?
Will you spend the winter in the south?
Nein, ich werde hier im Westen bleiben.
No, I will remain here in the west in winter.



Basic Conversation and Short Stories

Guten Morgen	<i>good morning</i>
Guten Tag	<i>good afternoon</i>
Guten Abend	<i>good evening</i>
Hallo!	<i>hello</i>
Servus!	<i>hi, hello, goodbye</i>
Wie geht es Ihnen?	
<i>How are you?</i> (formal singular and plural)	
Wie geht es dir?	
<i>How are you?</i> (informal singular)	
Wie geht es euch?	
<i>How are you?</i> (informal plural)	
Mir geht es gut	<i>I am well.</i>
Mir geht es ok	<i>I am ok.</i>
Mir geht es schlecht	
<i>I am not doing well.</i>	
Und Ihnen/dir/euch?	<i>And you?</i>
auf Wiedersehen!	<i>Goodbye!</i>
Tchüß!	<i>Bye!</i>
Bis später!	<i>until later!</i>
Bis dann!	<i>until then!</i>
Bis morgen!	<i>until tomorrow!</i>
Wir sehen uns!	<i>See you!</i>
Gute Nacht!	<i>Goodnight!</i>

Wie heißen Sie?
What is your name?
Wie heißt Du?
What is your name?
Ich heiße...
My name is...
Wie alt sind Sie?
How old are you?
Wie alt bist Du?
How old are you?
Ich bin....Jahre alt.
I am....years old.
Wann treffen wir uns?
When are we meeting?
Um wie viel Uhr treffen wir uns?
At what time are we meeting?
Passt. *Ok. (That works.)*
Das passt mir nicht.
That doesn't work for me.
Wie ist das Wetter?
How is the weather?
Es regnet. *It is raining.*
Es ist sonnig. *It is sunny.*
Mir ist kalt. *I am cold.*

Mir ist heiß. *I am hot.*

ABOUT YOU ÜBER SIE

How are you, Mr. Benz?

Es geht mir gut, danke. Und Ihnen?

I am well, thanks. And you?

Wie geht es Ihnen, Frau Keller?

How are you, Ms. Keller?

Es geht mir schlecht. Und Ihnen?

I'm not doing well. And you?

Wie geht's, Andreas?

How are you, Andreas?

Danke, sehr gut.

Thanks, very well.

Wie geht's, Gabi?

How are you, Gabi?

Nicht schlecht.

Not bad.

Es ist endlich sehr warm geworden.

It has finally become warm.

Wirst du Flugbegleiterin werden?

Will you become a flight attendant?

Martin hat das Wochenende in Bremen verbracht.

Martin spent the weekend in Bremen.

Vati wird die kleine Waldhütte verkaufen.
Dad will sell the little hut in the woods.
Er hat in der Waldhütte bleiben müssen.
He had to stay in the hut in the woods.
Wirst du endlich nach Freiburg kommen können?
Will you finally be able to come to Freiburg?
Wir sind ziemlich oft wandern gegangen.
We went hiking rather often.
Habt ihr genug Zeit gehabt?
Did you have enough time?
Die Polizisten werden den Verbrecher verhaften.
The police will arrest the criminal.
Auf dem Fußballfeld ist sie sehr schnell gelaufen.
She ran very fast on the soccer field.
Die Kinder haben zu oft ferngesehen.
The children watched TV too often.

Darf ich bitte Ihren Pass sehen? -

Could I see your passport, please?

Woher reisen Sie ein? -

Where have you travelled from?

Was ist der Grund Ihrer Einreise? -

What's the purpose of your visit?

Ich bin auf Urlaub - I'm on holiday.

Ich bin auf Geschäftsreise - I'm on business.

Ich besuche Verwandte -

I'm visiting relatives.

Wie lange werden Sie sich im Lande aufhalten? -

How long will you be staying?

Wo werden Sie übernachten? -

Where will you be staying?

Sie müssen ... ausfüllen -

You have to fill in this ...

Diese Einreisekarte - landing card

Dieses Einreiseformular - immigration form

Genießen Sie ihren Aufenthalt - Enjoy your stay!

Würden Sie bitte Ihre Tasche aufmachen? -

Could you open your bag, please?

Haben Sie etwas zu verzollen? -

Do you have anything to declare?

Diese Waren sind zollpflichtig -

You have to pay duty on these items.

Sabine: Hallo, Erik. **Wie geht's?**

Erik: Guten Tag, Sabine. Es **geht** mir
sehr gut. Danke. Und dir?

Sabine: Nicht schlecht. Wohin gehst **du**?

Erik: Zum Bahnhof. Ich hole meine
Cousine ab.

Sabine: Kenne ich deine Cousine?
Wie heißt sie?

Erik: Sie heißt Tina. **Du wirst** sie auf
der Party kennen lernen.

Sabine: Wie schön. Aber ich habe es
eilig. **Wiedersehen!**

Erik: Tschüs!

Hi, Erik. How are you?

*Hello, Sabine. I'm doing very
well. Thanks. And you?*

Not bad. Where are you going?

To the railroad station.

I'm picking up my cousin.

*Do I know your cousin? What's
her name?*

*Her name is Tina. You'll meet
her at the party.*

*How nice. But I'm in a hurry.
Good-bye!*

So long!

Herr Dorf: Guten Tag, Frau Schäfer. Wie geht es Ihnen?

Frau Schäfer: Sehr gut. Und Ihnen?

Herr Dorf: Nicht schlecht. Wohin gehen Sie?

Frau Schäfer: Nach Hause. Wir haben jetzt eine Wohnung im Stadtzentrum.

Herr Dorf: Wir wohnen noch in der Schillerstraße.

Frau Schäfer: Ach so. Was machen Sie gerade?

Herr Dorf: Ich werde **meinen** Sohn besuchen.
Er wohnt hier in der Stadt.

Frau Schäfer: Grüßen Sie **Ihre** Familie von mir!

Hello, Ms. Schäfer. How are you?

Very well. And you?

Not bad. Where are you going?

*Home. We have an apartment
downtown now.*

We still live on Schiller Street.

I see. What are you doing now?

*I'm going to visit my son. He lives
here in the city.*

Say hello to your family from me.



DAME AM STEUER

WOMAN DRIVER

ES ist ja nicht wahr, was Fedja immer sagt, ich habe den Teufel im Leib, sobald ich am Volant sitze. Zugegeben, ich fahre rasch, rasch, aber sauber. Kann man denn sauber fahren, wenn man rasch fährt?

IT'S simply not true, as Fedja always maintains, that the devil's within me the moment I'm sitting behind the wheel. Admittedly I drive fast; fast, but well. Is it possible to drive well if one is driving fast?

Der Abend – aufgeklart nach Regen. Im Westen, fern, der blaßgelbe Schein, der Himmel reingefegt und kalt wie aus Jade. Die Stadt sinkt unter der Rampe weg. Wie kühn die Straße steigt, Kurve um Kurve. Da unten in dem Lichtgesprenkel blinkt auch Fedjas Haus und das meine. Er sitzt daheim² und liest, liest und denkt nach und schweigt, die Uhr tickt, ihre Zeiger kriechen, von Zeit zu Zeit stäubt Fedja seine Zigarette ab und die Asche häuft sich in der Schale.

The evening – clear after rain. In the west, far away, the pale yellow light, the sky swept clean and looking as cold as jade. The town is falling away now behind the slope. How boldly the road is climbing, curve after curve. Down there among the speckles of light, Fedja's house and mine is blinking away. He's sitting at home reading, reading and thinking and not saying a word, the clock is ticking away, its fingers are creeping round, from time to time Fedja flicks the ash off his cigarette and the ash will be mounting in the ash-tray.

Da – im Rückspiegel, was ist das? großer breitgedrückter bronzebrauner Ball – ah, der Mond! geht dort im Osten auf, schweres glosendes³ Licht, Mond im September. Man nennt ihn Jägermond, wohl weil September die Zeit der Jäger ist, Halali über Heide und Felder, die Büchse knallt und das Wild birgt sich zitternd im Busch.

There – in the rear-mirror, what's that? A great flat-looking bronze-brown ball – ah, the moon! Rises in the east, a dull, gleaming light, the September moon. They call it the Hunter's Moon, because September is the huntsman's season I suppose, 'Tally-ho!' over moors and fields, the gun barks, and the deer hides trembling with fear in the wood.

Was willst du, altes Gestirn, dein Schein ist nichtig, nichtig geworden in unseren Nächten, die hell sind von anderen und so viel stärkeren Lichtern. Bist nicht mehr fern wie einst, unerreichbar, alter Mond der Liebenden, Freund der seufzenden Dichter. Das Geschoß⁴ hat dich getroffen, eine Wunde deiner eisigen Haut geschlagen, deiner narbigen Kraterhaut. Erst gestern hab ich mit Fedja darüber geredet, und Fedja sagte: Wozu das alles? Ich verstehe die Menschen nicht. – Und ich darauf: Fedja, verstehst du denn auch nur mich? – Da machte

er die Augen schmal und schaute mich lange an und sagte endlich: Nicht immer, Barbara, verstehe ich dich.

What do you want, poor old star, your light is nothing, is nothing now in our nights which are bright with other and far stronger lights. You are no longer remote as you were once, no longer beyond our reach, old moon of lovers, friend of sighing poets. The rocket struck you, cut a wound in your icy skin, in your skin pock-marked with craters. Only yesterday I was talking to Fedja about it, and Fedja said: What's the point of it all? I don't understand human beings. And I in reply: Fedja, do you even understand me? He narrowed his eyes and looked at me for a long time, and finally said: I don't always understand you, Barbara.

Nicht immer? Nie verstehst du mich, Fedja; am wenigsten, wenn ich abends wegfahre ohne Ziel und Zweck, fahre wie jetzt, nur um den Wagen zu steuern, um nicht mit dir im Zimmer zu sitzen, wo die Uhr tickt, wo sich die Schale mit Asche füllt, wo dein Schweigen die Wände anschweigt⁵ daß sie näher rücken, immer näher, bis mir ist, als würden sie mich erdrücken.

Not always? You've never understood me, Fedja; least of all when I drive off in the evening without rhyme or reason, drive like I'm driving now, just for the sake of steering the car, to avoid sitting with you in the room, where the clock is ticking away, the ash-tray filling with ash, where your silence is a silent appeal to the walls, so that they close in, close in more and more, till I feel as though they are going to smother me.

Da muß ich fahren, Fedja. An Ausreden fehlt es mir nicht, wenn du sie mir auch nicht mehr glaubst, diese armseligen Lügen. Auch heute belog ich dich: Ich wollte Ruth besuchen, meine Schwester, die krank ist. Ja, krank ist sie; trotzdem besuch ich sie nicht, und du weißt es, weißt, daß ich Ruth nicht mag, daß ich im Grunde niemand mag, nicht einmal – dich.

Then I have to go driving, Fedja. I'm not short of other excuses if you don't believe them any longer, these pitiful lies. I lied to you again today, saying I wanted to visit Ruth, my sister, who's ill. She's ill, all right; but all the same, I don't visit her, and you know it, know that I can't stand Ruth, that I really can't stand anyone, not even – you.

Ah, Ortschaft! Aufgepaßt! Hier wird die Straße eng, verdammt! wie ich die Engen doch hasse,

vollgestopft mit Radfahrern, Fußgängern, Kindern und Hunden. Finster und ungeschlachtet biegt ein Fuhrwerk ums Eck,⁶ Ackergäule, ein Fuder Heu – sollte verboten sein auf einer Straße wie dieser!

Ah, built-up area! Look out! The road's getting narrow here, damn! How I hate these narrow roads, chock-full with cyclists, pedestrians, children, and dogs. Dark and ponderous, some sort of vehicle is turning the corner, cart-horses, a cartload of hay – ought to be banned on a road like this!

Mein guter Wagen, hab Geduld, mein guter schöner Wagen, nur Geduld, gleich sind wir draußen, gleich bist du wieder frei. Da – endlich: open drive. Häuser und Menschen bleiben zurück, die Straße stürzt uns entgegen und der Wind, der süße sausende Ton, der an den Scheiben zerblättert.⁷ Schneller! Schneller! Der weiße Streifen rennt uns voraus, die roten Zwinkeraugen an den Randsteinkappen, schneller, schneller fliegen Signale vorbei: Kreuzung, Kurve, Gefälle. Immer rufen die Tafeln: Gefahr! Gefahr! Wer möchte denn fahren ohne Gefährdung?

Old car, be patient, my beautiful old car, be patient, we'll be out of it soon, soon you'll be free again. There it is now at last – clearway. Houses and

people are being left behind, the road is tearing towards us and the wind, the sweet sighing sound sweeping its leaves against the windows. Faster! Faster! The white line is running ahead of us, the red cat's-eyes on the kerb-stones, faster and faster the signs flash past: Cross-Roads, Bend, Steep Hill. Always the signposts call out: Danger! Danger! Who would want to drive but for the sense of danger?

Was uns entgegenkommt: weggezischt wie ein spuk-haftes Bild. Was vorne ist: eingeholt, überholt, ausgelöscht ins Irgendwo-hinter-uns. (Soll keiner glauben, er fahre schneller als ich, soll keiner glauben: nur eine Dame am Steuer!) Wärest du jctzt neben mir, Fedja, du fingest zu wettern an: Bist du verrückt? – Über Hundert! – Aber du bist nicht da, sitztest daheim in der Stube, blätterst in deinen Büchern, spinnst⁸ an Erinnerungen oder an Plänen für später. Plan und Erinnerung, ein und dasselbe Netz, das uns das Leben einfangen soll, Leben, wie du es meinst. Immer und Einerlei. Aber ich will es nicht, dieses gefangene Leben. Ich will das Jetzt und Hier, dieses Hier, das schon Dort ist, open drive soweit der Scheinwerfer reicht, Halali auf der Straße, Jagd und Beute. Was ist die Beute einer solchen Nacht?

Everything coming towards us goes swishing past like a ghostly apparition. Everything ahead of us is caught up, overtaken, obliterated to somewhere-behind-us. (Let none of them think he can drive faster than me, let none of them think: only a woman driver!) If you were beside me now, Fedja, you would be starting to curse: Are you crazy? – Over a hundred! – But you're not there, you're sitting at home in the room, turning the pages of your books, spinning a crazy web of memories or plans for later. Plan and memory: one and the same web designed to snare our life, life as you understand it. But I don't want it, this life-in-a-snare. I want the here-and-now, this here which is already there, clearway as far as the headlamps reach, tally-ho on the road, hunt and quarry. What is the quarry for a night such as this?

Früher jagten die Jäger zu Pferd. Die Büchse knallte: ein Knäuel Pelz und zuckendes Fleisch, verglaste Augen, milchig und blicklos, nachher die dampfende Mahlzeit, und das war alles. Heute jagt man zu Wagen.² Die Beute: Schein und Chimäre, Ritt auf dem Rücken des Lichts, weißen Scheinwerferkegels, ins Rußschwarz der Nacht geschleudert, weißer Kahlschlag des Lichts quer durch die Finsternis. Fließband der Landschaft, Wald

und Fels wie Kulissen, spulen¹⁰ heran und vorbei, Brücken, Mauern, Geländer – irgendwo brüllt ein Gießbach, irgendwo tobt ein Abgrund, aus phantomhafter Schlucht weht eine Wasserfahne, farblos stiebender Schaum.

Time was when huntsmen hunted on horseback. The gun barked: a ball of fur and quivering flesh, glazed eyes, milky and unseeing, afterwards the meal served piping hot, and that was all. Now we hunt mounted on cars. The quarry: phantom and chimera, riding mounted on lights, on the white cone of the headlamps, hurtling into the soot-black of night, a white clearing of light slicing its way through the dark. Conveyor-belt of scenery, woods and rocks like backdrops, come reeling towards us and past, bridges, walls, railings – somewhere a mountain torrent is raging, somewhere an abyss is roaring, out of some ghastly chasm a trail of water is blown, spray colourless in the air.

Alle Dinge entwest¹¹ zu farblos stiebendem Schaum.

All things dissolve into spray colourless in the air.

Ja, es ist wahr, was Fedja einmal mir sagte: Liebe ist nicht in dir, nur die Gier nach dem Nichts.

Yes, it's true, what Fedja said to me once: There is no love in you, only a yearning for the void.

Ja, es ist wahr, ist wahr. – Aber was ist dieses Nichts?

Yes, it's true, true. But what is this void?

Hat es nicht auch ein Gesicht? Unser eignes Gesicht? Nein. Es ist anders und fremd, unerreichbar und schön.

Does it not have a face? Is its face not our own? No. It is other than us and strange, out of our reach and beautiful.

Neulich – wie war das doch – auf einer Fahrt wie dieser, oder träumte ich sie? Ja, ich träumte sie nur, diese Fahrt ins Gebirge und, wie Träume schon sind: alles war groß und phantastisch, riesig die Landschaft, riesig die Nacht, und die Straße, immer hinauf, hinauf, endlos, spiralig, schwindelnde Viadukte übereinander getürmt. Vor mir ein blauer Wagen. Marke? Mir unbekannt. Aus einem fremden Land wohl, Fremdling auf meiner Straße, immer vor mir, schneller und immer noch schneller, unüberholbar, wie ich mich auch beeile. Sollte er mir entfliehen? Nein, ich will ihn erreichen. Angst, daß er mir entschwinde, Angst, weil die Straße so schmal

wird, immer engere Kreise zieht sie auf immer engeren Kurven, und der Fremdling – kein Wagen – öffnet die silbernen Flügel, lächelt aus blauem Visier

...

Recently – how did it come about – when driving like this, or did I dream it? Yes, I dreamt it merely, this drive up into the mountains; and, as dreams always are, everything was larger than life and fantastic, giant scenery, giant-like the night, and the road, ever upwards, upwards, endless, spiralling, giddy viaducts towering one over the other. In front of me a blue car. Make? Not one I know. From some foreign country, I suppose, a foreigner on my road, keeping in front of me all the time, faster and faster still, going too fast to be overtaken, however hard I keep my foot down. Is he going to get away? No, I'll catch him, I will. Afraid that he may elude me, afraid because the road is getting so narrow, sweeping in tighter and tighter circles round ever narrower bends, and the stranger – not a car at all – opens his silvery wings, smiles from behind his blue visor. ...

Da ist die Straße verschwunden – Bodenloses verschlingt mich.

Now the road has vanished into thin air – bottomless space is swallowing me up.

Über den Straßenrand führt eine Reifenspur, und ein junger Mann, der von der Arbeit heimfährt, spät, auf dem Rad, hat sie entdeckt und gemeldet.

Over the edge of the road a tyre mark, and a young man travelling home from work, late, on his bicycle, has found and reported it.

Am nächsten Morgen eine Notiz in der Zeitung: Der tägliche Tod auf der Straße und so weiter.
The following morning a report in the paper: The death-a-day on the road and so on.

Immer so weiter unter dem Jägermond.

And so on for ever under the Hunter's Moon.

RUSSIAN

Russian belongs to the family of **Indo-European languages**. It is an official language in Russia, Belarus, Kazakhstan, Kyrgyzstan, as well as being Caucasus, Central Asia and to some extent in the Baltic states. **Russian Cyrillic** is based on an alphabet invented around **AD 863** by a Macedonian monk, who spoke a *South Slavonic language* closely related to Russian and also knew **Greek**; the inventor was later canonized as *Saint Cyril*, hence the name Cyrillic. So this is an original Slavonic based alphabet on the Greek one, so some of the letters will be familiar, e.g. **п**, the Russian **р**, which you may recognize as the Greek **π**, used in mathematics. The alphabet has thirty-three letters. Russian words are pronounced as they are written.

Русский звук и алфавит

/ruskiy zvuk i alfavit/ Russian sound and alphabet



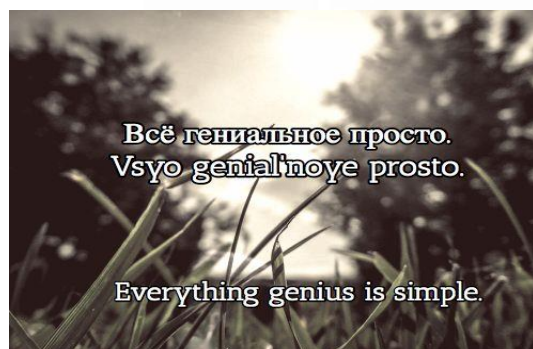
А а (A)	Р р (R)
Б б (B)	С с (S)
В в (V)	Т т (T)
Г г (G)	У у (U)
Д д (D)	Ф ф (F)
Е е (E)	Х х (KH)
Ё ё (YO)	Ц ц (TS)
Ж ж (ZH)	Ч ч (CH)
З з (Z)	Ш ш (SH)
И и (I)	Щ щ (SHCH)
Й й (Y)	ъ (-)
К к (K)	ы (Y)
Л л (L)	ь (')
М м (M)	Э э (E)
Н н (N)	Ю ю (YU or IU)
О о (O)	Я я (YA or IA)
П п (P)	

А а	<i>A a</i>	[a]	Р р	<i>P p</i>	[r]
Б б	<i>B b</i>	[b]	С с	<i>C c</i>	[s]
В в	<i>V v</i>	[v]	Т т	<i>T t</i>	[t]
Г г	<i>G g</i>	[g]	У у	<i>U u</i>	[u]
Д д	<i>D d</i>	[d]	Ф ф	<i>F f</i>	[f]
Е е	<i>E e</i>	[ye]	Х х	<i>H h</i>	[h]
Ё ё	<i>Yo yo</i>	[yo]	Ц ц	<i>ts</i>	[ts]
Ж ж	<i>zh</i>	[zh]	Ч ч	<i>ch</i>	[ch]
З з	<i>Z z</i>	[z]	Ш ш	<i>sh</i>	[sh]
И и	<i>i</i>	[i]	Щ щ	<i>sch</i>	[sch]
Й й	<i>j</i>	[j]	- Ъ	- <i>ʼ</i>	[ʼ]
К к	<i>k</i>	[k]	- Ы	- <i>y</i>	[y]
Л л	<i>l</i>	[l]	- Ь	- <i>ʼ</i>	[ʼ]
М м	<i>m</i>	[m]	Э э	<i>e</i>	[e]
Н н	<i>n</i>	[n]	Ю ю	<i>yu</i>	[yu]
О о	<i>o</i>	[o]	Я я	<i>ya</i>	[ya]
П п	<i>p</i>	[p]			



ДА	<i>DA</i>	yes
НЕТ	<i>NYET</i>	no
БАНК	<i>BANK</i>	bank
БАР	<i>BAR</i>	bar
ПАРК	<i>PARK</i>	park
КАССА	<i>KAsa</i>	cashier
ТАКСИ	<i>taKSI</i>	taxi
КИОСК	<i>kiOSK</i>	kiosk, newsstand
КАФЕ	<i>kaFE</i>	café
БУФЕТ	<i>buFYET</i>	buffet, snack bar
МЕТРО	<i>miTRO</i>	metro, subway
МОСКВА	<i>maskVa</i>	Moscow
АЭРОПОРТ	<i>aeraPORT</i>	airport
АЭРОФЛОТ	<i>aeraFLOT</i>	Aeroflot
ЗАЛ	<i>ZAL</i>	hall

ВХОД	<i>FKHOT</i>	entrance
ВЫХОД	<i>VYkhat</i>	exit
ЦЕНТР	<i>TSEnTR</i>	center
БЮРО	<i>byuRO</i>	bureau
ГАРДЕРОБ	<i>gardiROP</i>	garderobe, coat check
ПОЧТА	<i>POCHta</i>	post office
РЯД	<i>RYAT</i>	row
СТОЙТЕ	<i>STOYtye</i>	Stand!
НЕ КУРИТЬ	<i>nye kuRIT'</i>	No Smoking
БОЛЬШОЙ	<i>bal'SHOY</i>	the Bolshoi, big
ЖЕНСКИЙ	<i>ZHENski</i>	ladies' (room)
МУЖСКОЙ	<i>muSHKOY</i>	men's (room)
ЕЩЁ	<i>yiSCHO</i>	more, else



Hard Vowels

а	a as in father	А	да <i>DA</i>
э	e as in echo	Е	эхо <i>Ekho</i>
ы	y as in hairy	У	мы <i>MY</i>
о	o as in hello	О	но <i>NO</i>
у	u as in rule	У	ну <i>NU</i>

Soft Vowels

я	ya as in yahoo	Я	я <i>YA</i>
е	ye as in yes	Е	нет <i>NYET</i>
и	ee as in bee	И	ива <i>Iva</i>
ё	yo as in yo-yo	Ю	полёт <i>paLYOT</i>
ю	u as in union	У	юмор <i>YUmar</i>



CONSONNANTS

б	b as in bat	В	банк <i>BANK</i>
в	v as in vote	В	вот <i>VOT</i>
г	g as in go	Г	гол <i>GOL</i>
д	d as in dog	Д	да <i>DA</i>
ж	zh as in azure	Ж	жена <i>zhiNA</i>
з	z as in zoo	З	за <i>ZA</i>
й	y as in boy	У	мой <i>MOY</i>
к	k as in kayak	К	касса <i>KAsa</i>
л	l as in lot	Л	лампа <i>LAMpa</i>
м	m as in mall	М	муж <i>MUSH</i>
н	n as in note	Н	нос <i>NOS</i>
п	p as in papa	Р	парк <i>PARK</i>
р	r as in rabbit	Р	рот <i>ROT</i>

с	s as in sun	S	суп <i>SUP</i>
т	t as in toe	T	такси <i>taKSI</i>
ф	f as in fund	F	фунт <i>FUNT</i>
х	ch as in Bach, loch	KH	ах <i>AKH</i>
ц	ts as in tsar	TS	царь <i>TSAR'</i>
ч	ch as in cheap	CH	читает <i>chiTAyit</i>
ш	sh as in show	SH	шапка <i>SHAPka</i>
щ	sh as in sheep	SCH	щи <i>SCHI</i>
ъ	hard sign		not pronounced
ь	soft sign		not pronounced



РОССИЙСКИЕ НОМЕРА

RUSSIAN NUMBERS

1

один
“a-deen”

6

шесть
“shest”

2

два
“dva”

7

семь
“syem”

3

три
“tree”

8

восемь
“vo-syem”

4

четыре
“chye-tir-ye”

9

девять
“dyev-yat”

5

пять
“pyat”

10

десять
“dyes-yat”

11 одиннадцать **16** шестнадцать
"adeennadtsat" "shet'nadtsat"

12 дванадцать **17** семнадцать
"dvanadtsat" "sem'nadtsat"

13 тринадцать **18** восемнадцать
"trinadtsat" "vosem'nadtsat"

14 четырнадцать **19** девятнадцать
"che'tyrnadsat" "devyat'nadtsat"

15 пятнадцать **20** двадцать
"pyat'nadtsat" "d'vadtsat"

Letter	IPA	Pronunciation	Letter	IPA	Pronunciation
А а	/a/	a as in father (short)	Щ щ	/ʃɕ/	shch as in fresh cheese
Б б	/b/ or /bʲ/	b as in bed p at end of word	Ъ ъ	(hard sign)	<i>Do not palatalize the preceding consonant</i>
В в	/v/ or /vʲ/	v as in vote f at end of word	Ы ы	/ɨ/	a short i or 'ool' sound as in milk
Г г	/g/ or /gʲ/	g as in gate k at end of word	Ь ь	/ɨ/	<i>Palatalizes preceding consonant</i>
Д д	/d/ or /dʲ/	d as in date t at end of word	Э э	/e/	e as in met
Е е	/je/, /'e/ or /e/	ye as in yes	Ю ю	/ju/ or /'u/	yu as in yuletide
Ё ё	/jo/ or /'o/	yo as in yours	Я я	/ja/ or /'a/	ya as in yard
Ж ж	/zʲ/	s as in measure (zh)	Letters no longer in use since 1918		
З з	/z/ or /zʲ/	z as in zebra	І і	/ɨ/, /'ɨ/, or /j/	just like И и or Й й
И и	/i/, /'i/, or /ɨ/	ee as in meet (short)	Ө ө	/t/ or /f/	just like Ф ф
Й й	/j/	y as in boy	ѐ ё	/e/ or /'e/	just like Е е
К к	/k/ or /kʲ/	k as in kite	ѐ ѐ	/ɨ/ or /'ɨ/	Usually like И и
Л л	/l/ or /lʲ/	l as in letter	Letters no longer in use since 1750		
М м	/m/ or /mʲ/	m as in maid	Ѕ ѕ	/z/ or /zʲ/	Like З з
Н н	/n/ or /nʲ/	n as in no	Ѣ ѣ	/ks/ or /ksʲ/	Like Кс (кс)
О о	/o/	aw as in law (short)	Ѥ ѥ	/ps/ or /psʲ/	Like Пс (пс)
П п	/p/ or /pʲ/	p as in pet	Ѧ ѧ	/o/	Like О о
Р р	/r/ or /rʲ/	rolled R (like in Italian or Spanish)	Ѩ ѩ	/u/, /ju/ or /'u/	Like У у or Ю ю
С с	/s/ or /sʲ/	s as in sun	Ѭ ѭ	/ja/ or /'a/	Like Я я
Т т	/t/ or /tʲ/	t as in tall	Ѯ ѯ	/ju/ or /'u/	Like Ю ю
У у	/u/	oo as in food (short)	Ѱ ѱ	/ja/ or /'a/	Like Я я
Ф ф	/f/ or /fʲ/	f as in funny			
Х х	/x/ or /xʲ/	like the German loch			
Ц ц	/ts/	ts as in pets			
Ч ч	/tɕ/	ch as in chair			
Ш ш	/ʃ/	sh as in show			

Consonants and Vowels

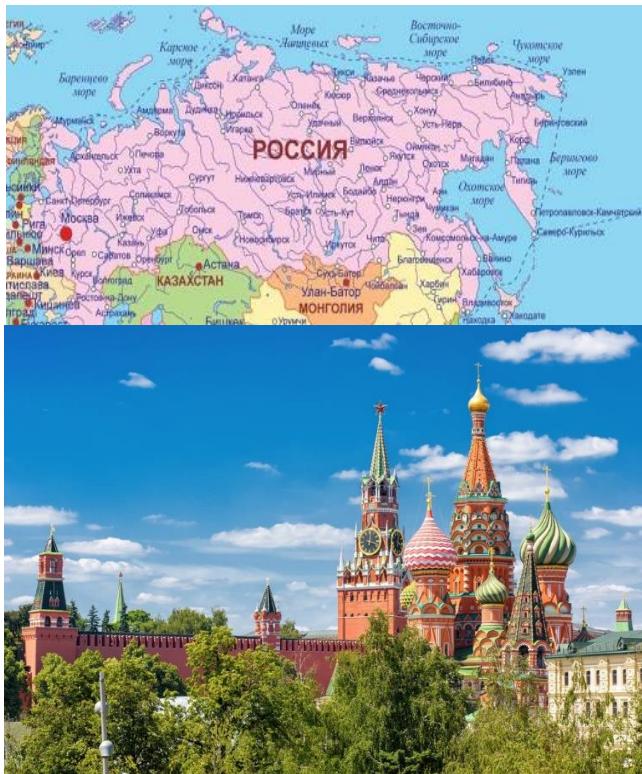
There are 21 consonant letters in Russian: **б, в, г, д, ж, з, к, л, м, н, п, р, с, т, ф, х, ц, ч, ш, щ**. The consonant letter **й** is sometimes called a semivowel. There are 10 vowel letters: **а, э, ы, у, о, я, е, ё, ю, и**.

Two letters of the Russian alphabets do not designate any sounds. They are the "soft sign" (**ь**) and the "hard sign" (**ъ**).

Russian consonant letters can be pronounced either "soft" or "hard" depending on the type of a letter that comes after them. For this reason, the 20 consonant letters of the Russian alphabet can designate 37 distinct consonant sounds!

In general, Russian vowels are divided into two basic types: "soft-indicating" and "hard-indicating" vowels. The "hard-indicating" vowels are **а, э, ы, у, о**. Russian "soft-indicating" vowels are formed from their "hard-indicating" counterparts by adding an English sound of "y" at the beginning. Thus you will get such "soft-indicating" vowels as **я, е, ё, ю, и**.

КАРТА РОССИИ /KARTA ROSSII/ MAP OF RUSSIA



Основные слова и фразы

Osnovnyye slova i frazy

Basic words and phrases

ЦВЕТА /TSVETA/ CLORS

		
красный	белый	зелёный
		
голубой	синий	серый
		
чёрный	оранжевый	жёлтый
		
коричневый	розовый	фиолетовый



НЕКОТОРЫЕ ОБЩИЕ СЛОВА SOME COMMON WORDS

Космос	cosmos
Школа	school
Атмосфера	atmosphere
Студент	student
Факт	fact
Компьютер	computer
Интернет	Internet
Вебсайт	website
Провайдер	provider
Чат	chat

фрукты и овощи fruits and vegetables frukty i ovoshchi



Яблоко
Apple



Груша
Pear



Персик
Peach



Абрикос
Apricot



Нектарин
Nectarine



Слива
Plum



Инжир
Fig



Авокадо
Avocado



Гранат
Pomegranate



Виноград
Grapes



Арбуз
Watermelon



Дыня
Melon

Цитрусовые фрукты Citrus fruits



Апельсин
Orange



Мандарин
Mandarin



Грейпфрут
Grapefruit



Лимон
Lemon



Лайм
Lime

Тропические фрукты Tropical fruits



Ананас
Pineapple



Манго
Mango



Банан
Banana



Кокос
Coconut



Киви
Kiwi

месяцы года

mesyatsy goda
monthes of the year

Январь [yan-VAR'] January

Февраль [feev-RAL'] February

Март [MART] March

Апрель [ap-RYEL'] April

Май [MAY] May

Июнь [ee-YOON'] June

Июль [ee-YOOL'] July

Август [AV-goost] August

Сентябрь [seen-TYABR'] September

Октябрь [ak-TYABR'] October

Ноябрь [na-YABR'] November

Декабрь [dee-KABR'] December



плохо себя чувствую
plokho sebya chuvstvuyu
not feeling well

Мне плохо [MNYE PLO-ha] I feel bad

Мне нехорошо [MNYE nee-ha-ra-SHO] I don't feel well

Я плохо себя чувствую

[YA PLO-ha see-BYA CHOOS-tvoo-yoo]

I feel bad, I don't feel well



Я болен [YA BO-lyen] - I am sick (masc.)

Я больна [YA bal'-NA] - I am sick (fem.)

Я заболел [YA za-ba-LYEL] - I got sick (masc.)

Я заболела [YA za-ba-LYE-la] - I got sick (fem.)

Вы заболели [VI za-ba-LYE-lee] you got sick (plural)

У меня болит... [oo mee-NYA ba-LEET] - I have pain in...

У меня болит живот [oo mee-NYA ba-LEET zhee-VOT]

I have a stomach ache

хлеб и выпечка

khleb i vypetchka
bread and pastry

Хлеб [HLYEP] bread

Хлебный (adj.) [HLYEB-niy] bread

Белый хлеб [BYE-liy HLYEP] white bread

Ржаной хлеб [rzha-NOY HLYEP] rye bread



Выпечка [VI-peech-ka] pastry

Булочка [BOO-lach-ka] roll

Бублик [BOOB-leek] bagel

Рогалик [ra-GA-leek] bagel, croissant

Круассан [kroo-a-SAN] croissant

Пирожок [pee-ra-ZHOK] patty, pastry

Чебурек [chye-boo-RYEK] meat patty

Пончик [PON-cheek] donut

Печенье [pee-CHYEN'-ye] cookie, biscuit

Пряник [PRYA-neek] spice-cake, honey-cake

Пирожное [pee-ROZH-na-ye] pastry, fancy cake

Кекс [KYEKS] cupcake

Вафли [VAF-lee] waffles

Пирог [pee-ROK] pie

Торт [TORT] cake

Блин [BLEEN] pancake

Блинчик [BLEEN-cheek] pancake

Оладья [a-LA-d'ya] fritter, thick pancake



-КАКОЕ У ТЕБЯ ХОББИ?

What is your hobby?

-МОЁ ХОББИ - ЭТО ...

My hobby is...



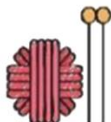
рисование
drawing



чтение
reading



спорт
sport



вязание
knitting



фотографии
photos



кулинария
cooking



стрельба
archery



садоводство
gardening



блогерство
blogging

описание вашего дома opisaniye vashego doma describing your home

Дом [DOM] house

Квартира [kvar-TEE-ra] apartment, flat

Прихожая [pree-HO-zha-ya] hallway, lobby

Коридор [ka-ree-DOR] hallway, corridor

Комната [KOM-na-ta] room

Зал [ZAL] hall

Гостинная [gas-TEE-na-ya] living room

Спальня [SPAL'-nya] bedroom

Комната для гостей [KOM-na-ta dlya gas-TYEE] guest room

Кухня [KOOH-nya] kitchen

Ванная [VA-na-ya] bathroom

Туалет [too-a-LYET] toilet, restroom, lavatory

Рабочий кабинет [ra-BO-cheey ka-bee-NYET] study

Библиотека [beeb-lee-a-TYE-ka] library

Чердак [cheer-DAK] attic, loft

Подвал [pad-VAL] basement, cellar

Погреб [POG-ryep] basement

Балкон [bal-KON] balcony

Терраса [tee-RA-sa] terrace

Веранда [vee-RAN-da] porch, terrace

Крыльцо [kri'l-TSO] porch



ЭМОЦИИ

emotsii

Emotions

Весёлый [vee-SYO-liy] merry, lively, jolly

Радостный [RA-das-niy] glad, joyous

Грустный [GROOS-niy] sad

Обиженный [a-BEE-zhye-niy] resentful

Разочарованный [ra-za-cha-RO-va-niy] disappointed

Злой [ZLOY] angry

Негодующий [nee-ga-DOO-yoo-shcheey] indignant

Яростный [YA-ras-niy] furious

Возмущённый [vaz-moo-SHCHO-niy] indignant

Раздражённый [raz-dra-ZHO-niy] irritated, aggravated

Быть расстроенным [BIT' ras-TRO-yee-nim] to be upset

Быть потрясённым [BIT' pat-rya-SYO-nim] to be shocked

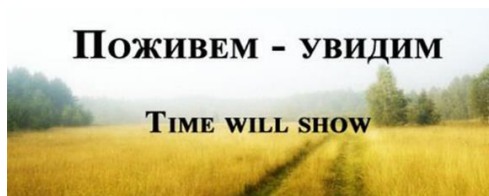
Быть в шоке [BIT' f SHO-kye] to be in shock

Смущённый [smoo-SHCHO-niy] embarrassed

Удивлённый [oo-deev-LYO-niy] surprised

Испуганный [ees-POO-ga-niy] scared

Greeting	Russian	(Phonetics)
Hello (formal)	Здравствуй <u>те</u>	(ZDRAST-uy-te)
Hello (familiar)	Здравствуй	(ZDRAST-uy)
Hi	Привет	(pri-VYET)
Good Day	Добрый день	(DO-briy DYEN)
Good Morning	Доброе утро	(DO-bra-ye OO-tra)
Good Evening	Добрый вечер	(DO-briy VYE-chir)
Good Night	Доброй ночи	(DO-broy NO-chi)
Sleep Well	Спокойной ночи	(spa-KOY-noy NO-chi)
Sweet Dreams	Сладких снов	(SLAD-kikh SNOF)
Goodbye	До свидания	(da svi-DA-ni-ya)
Farewell	Прощай	(pra-SCHAIY)
Bye	Пока	(pa-KA)
See You Soon	До скорого	(da SKO-ra-va)
See You Then	До встречи	(da VSTRYE-chi)
Happy Birthday!	С Днём Рождения!	(s DNYOM razh-DYE-ni-ya)
Merry Christmas!	С Рождеством	(s razh-DYE-stvam)
	Христовым!	(hri-STO-viym)
Happy New Year!	С Новым Годом!	(s NO-vim GO-dam)



English Phrase	Russian Equivalent (Phonetics)
I know	Я знаю (ya ZNA-yoo)
I don't know	Я не знаю (ya nye ZNA-yoo)
I understand	Я понимаю (ya pa-ni-MA-yoo)
I don't understand	Я не понимаю (ya nye pa-ni-MA-yoo)
Do you speak English, please?	Вы говорите по-английски, пожалуйста? (VIY ga-va-REE-tye pa ang-GLIE-ski, pa-ZHAL-sta?)
Sorry, I don't speak Russian	Извините, Я не говорю по-русски (iz-vi-NEE-tye, ya NYE ga-var-YOO pa ROOSS-ki)
I study Russian language	Я изучаю русский язык (YA i-zoo-CHA-yoo ROOSS-ki yi-ZIYK)
Who is it?	Кто это? (k-TO EH-ta?)
What is it?	Что это? (shTO EH-ta?)
What's this called?	Как это называется? (kak EH-ta na-zi-VA-yet-sa?)
What's that called?	Как то называется? (kak TO na-zi-VA-yet-sa?)

матрёшки
matryoshki
Russian dolls

лицо
litsq
face

цветок
tsvetok
flower

лист
list
leaf



содержание
soderzhaniye
contents



10

люди
lyudi
people



28

внешность
vneshnost'
appearance



102

покупки
pokuпки
shopping



116

еда
yeda
food



192

транспорт
transport
transportation



218

спорт
sport
sports



8

о словаре
o slovare
about the dictionary



9

как пользоваться
словарем
kak pol'zovatsa
slovarom
how to use this book



56

дом
dom
home



92

службы
sluzhby
services



160

учёба
uchyoba
study



170

работа
rabota
work



указатель
ukazatel'
index



благодарности
blagodamnosti
acknowledgments



окружающая среда
okruzhayushchaya
sreda
environment



справка
spravka
reference



досуг
dosug
leisure



питание вне дома
pitaniye vne doma
eating out

Early Relationship Phrases

I like you

Вы мне нравитесь

(viy mnye NRA-vi-tis')

It seems to me that we could
be happy together

**Мне кажется, мы можем быть
счастливы вместе**

*(mnye KA-zhi-tsa, mij MO-zhim
biyt' SCHAS-li-viy FMYE-sti)*

My dear

Моя дорогая

(ma-YA da-ra-GA-ya)

Darling

милая

(MEE-la-ya)

I have dreamt of meeting a
woman like you all my life

**Я мечтал встретить Вас всю
свою жизнь**

*(ya mich-TAL FSTRYE-tit' vas fsyoo
sva-YOO zheezn')*

I can't wait for your call

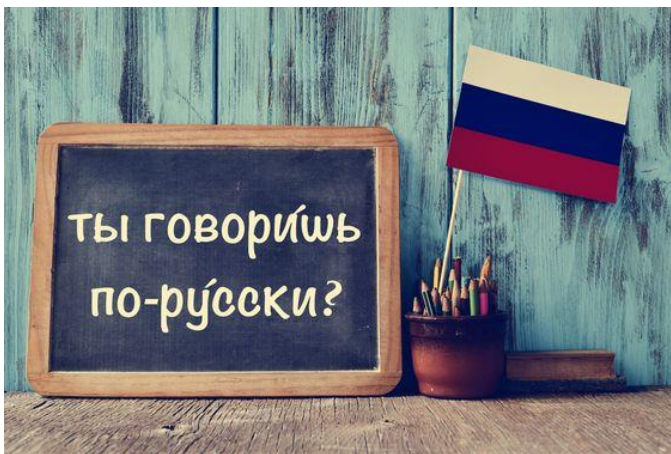
**Я не могу дождаться твоего
звонка**

*(ya ni ma-GOO da-ZHDAT'-sa
tva-yi-VO zvan-KA)*

Terms of Endearment (sweet nicknames)

My honey	Моя родная (ma-YA rad-NA-ya)
My only one	Моя единственная (ma-YA yi-DEENST-vi-na-ya)
My sweetheart	Солнышко моё родное (SOL-niysh-ka ma-YO rad-NO-ye)
My little berry	Ягодка моя (YA-gat-ka ma-YA)
My little sweet swan	Лебедушка моя (l-BYE-doosh-ka ma-YA)
My little bear	Зайка моя (ZAIY-ka ma-YA)
My little kitten	Котик мой (KO-tik moy)
My little sparrow	Ты мой воробышек (tij moy va-RO-biy-shik)

Basic Russian Grammar



GENDER OF NOUNS: There are 3 genders in Russian nouns which is almost always obvious on the spelling: **neuter** (or neutral), **masculine** and **feminine**.

Masculine: ends in a consonant or **й**.

Паспорт (*passport*), брат (*brother*), документ (*document*), Хлеб (*bread*).

Feminine: if it ends in **я** or **а**.

Газета (*newspaper*), Россия (*Russia*),

Masculine or feminine: if the sign is soft **ь**.

День (*day, which is considered as masculine*)

Жизнь (*life, which is considered as feminine*)

Neuter: if it ends in **е** or **о**.

Радио (*radio*), здание (*building*), письмо (*letter*)

Exceptions are Naturally **Masculine**: Папа (*Papa, Daddy*), Мужчина (*Man*), Дедушка (*Grandfather*), Дядя (*Uncle*), Кофе (*Coffee*).

Note: Forms of **pronouns** and **adjectives** depend on the **gender** and the **plural** form of the **noun**.

NOUN CASES

Поезд, *train*:

Genitive case:

много поездов /mnogo poyezdov/ *many trains*

Instrumental case:

ехать поездом / yekhat' poyezdom/ *to go by train*

Note: The meaning of the noun is important no the position in the sentence so **ORDER DOES NOT MATTER:** /

Иван даёт цветы Анне.

/Ivan dayot tsvety Anne/

Ivan gives flowers to Anna.

Nominative case (subject) **Анна** /Anna/

Accusative case (object) **Анну** /Annu/

Dative case (indirect object) **Анне** /Anne/ (*to Anna*)

Genitive case (possession) **Анны** /Anny/ (*Anna's*)

Instrumental case (by means/with) **Анной** /Annoy/
(*With Anna*).

Она рисовала **мелком**. She drew **with a chalk**.

/Ona risovala melkom/

Prepositional case (about/at/on/in). **Анне** (*about Anna*).

мы говорили **об анне**. We talked **about Anne**.
/my govorili ob anne/

Nominative case (subject, doer of verb)

All nouns in Russian dictionaries are presented in the nominative case. This answers the questions “**what**” or “**who**”.

Студент (*student*) used in the nominative case:

Студент читает. The student is reading.
/Student chitayet/

Accusative case (object or receiver verb)

Я читаю газету. *I read the newspaper*.

Here the nominative **газета** was changed into the accusative case by changing the last letter “**а**” to “**у**”, becoming **газету**.

Я встретил друга. /ya vstretil druga/ I met the friend. Here the nominative case **друг** was changed into the accusative case by adding “**а**”, becoming “**друга**”.



Rules for accusative case

Inanimate (non-living) masculine nouns: there is no change in the nominative case.

Animate (living) masculine nouns: End with a consonant add "a" from accusative case ; **Иван** = **Ивана**(Ivan). End with **й /ь**, replace it with **я**.

Feminine nouns: Replace the ending “а” with “у” and replace the ending “я” with “ю”.

Москва = **Москву**(Moscow)

музыка = **музыку**(music)

газета = **газету**(newspaper)

Inanimate neuter nouns: like nominative case (no change)

спорт = спорт (sport) , **здание = здание**(building)

The **accusative case** also use for repeated time:

Саша **работает каждый день**

Sasha rabotayet kazhdyy den'

Sasha works every day.

Here “work” is a repeated action (every day).

Маша **работала всю ночь.**

Masha rabotala vsyu noch'.

Here “work” is continued for some time.

Genitive case (of/ of the); shows that something or somebody refers or belongs to something or somebody.

Берег реки = the bank *of the river*=river bank

морской берег /morskoy bereg/ *sea shore = shore of the sea*

The word ending **-а** is changed into **-и**: **река** (nominative) = **реки** (genitive)

The **genitive case** is used in quantifying things as well. **Quantified objects** being are always in the genitive case.

Много молока. Much [of] milk.

/mnogo moloka/

пять килограммов. Five [of] kilograms.

/pyat' kilogrammov /

несколько килограммов. A few [of] kilograms

/neskol'ko kilogrammov/.

Dative case (indirect object): **Я иду к врачу.** I go *to the doctor*. Here the nominative **врач** is changed by adding “y” to the word, turning it into the dative case **врачу**.

Иван дал стол Валерию.

/Ivan dal stol Valeriyu/

Ivan gave the table to Valery.

Иван написал письмо другу.

/Ivan napisal pis'mo drugu/

Ivan wrote a letter to a friend.

Ивану холодно.

/Ivanu kholodno/

Ivan is cold (person).

Маше убрать комнату.

/Mashe ubrat' komnatu/

It's Masha's turn to clean up the room.

Instrumental Case (tools to do something):

Я пишу карандашом. I write with a pencil.

Here Карандаш (nominative)= карандашом
(instrumental) .

Prepositional case: A preposition is always used in this noun case.

Цветы стоят на столе.

The flowers are *on the table*.

Here **стол** (nominative) = **стол** (prepositional)

Книга—**в** ящике. The book is **in** the drawer.

Книга—**на** столе. The book is **on** the table.

NUMBER OF NOUNS

Number refers to either singular or plural forms. There are **different endings** when it comes to number of nouns. For **masculine** nouns ending in **hard consonant** and **feminine** nouns ending in "a" the ending used to for **plural** form is "-ы".

Стол /stol/ table (singular),

столы /stoly/ tables (plural),

улица /ulitsa/ the street (singular),

улицы /ulitsy/ streets (plural)

For any nouns ends in (-ь, -й, -я) the ending used for the plural form is **и**.

Дверь /dver'/ door (singular)

Двери /dveri/ doors (plural)

Земля / zemlya/ earth (singular)

Земли /zemli/ earth (plural)

For feminine and masculine nouns, whose stem ends in (-**к**, -**г**, -**х**, -**ч**, -**щ**, -**ж**, -**ш**) the ending used for the plural form is “**и**”.

Нож / NoZH/ knife (singular)

Ножи / **Nozhi**/ knives (plural)

Нога /noga/ leg (singular)

Ноги /nogi/ legs (plural)

For neuter nouns that end in “-**о**”, the ending for the plural form is “-**а**”.

Окно /Okno/ window (singular)

Окна / Okna/ windows (plural)

For neuter nouns that end in “-е”, the ending for the plural form is “-я”.

Море sea (singular)

Моря seas (plural)

Some nouns are always singular.

Substances: Кислород (oxygen), Медь /med/ (copper)

Food products: Сахар /Sakhar/ (sugar), Мука (flour)

Objects (blocks): Мебель /Mebel/ (furniture)

Certain actions: Охота (hunting)

Feelings: Любовь, (love), Здоровье (health)

Fabrics: Бархат (velvet)

Medicine: Аспирин (aspirin)

Certain vegetables: Картофель (potato), Морковь (carrots).

Rules in forming plurals of noun cases

Nominative case plurals

Add the letters “а”, “и”, “я”, or “ы” to the nominative case of the noun and creates its plural form.

Masculine nouns

Those end in consonants, just add “ы”.

Институт (institute) = Институты

Студент (student) = студенты (students)

Those end in “й”, remove it and add “и”.

Трамвай / tramvay/ (tram) = Трамваи

Those end in “ь”, drop it and add “и”.

Конь /kon/ horse = Кони /koni/ horses

Feminine nouns

Those end in “я”, drop it and add “и”

Таня = Тани

Those end in “ь”, replace it with “и”

Тетрадь = тетради

Those end in “а” form plural replace it with “ы”

note: if the letter “а” is preceded by consonants (Ж, Г, Ш, К, Ч, Щ and Х) In this case, replace them with “и”.

Мама mother = Мамы mothers

Газета (newspaper) = газеты (newspapers)

Neuter nouns

Those end in “о” drop it and replace “а”.

Окно = Окна

Those end in “е” drop it and replace “я”.

Здание (building) = здания (buildings)

Море = моря

Note: in fact the plural form is just made by adding **Ы, Я, А/а** and **И** to the stem/base word.

Accusative case plurals

If the **direct object** is *inanimate*, it takes the plural form of its nominative case. If the **direct object** is **animate** (alive), it takes the plural form of the noun’s genitive case.

Genitive case plurals

In general, plural of **masculine nouns** in the genitive case end in **–ов** and of **Feminine nouns** just drop certain end letters. Forming the plural starts by basing the nouns on the nominative singular form.

Masculine nouns

Those end in **ж, ш, ч, щ, or ь**, replace **"ей"**.

Учитель = учителей

Those end in **"й, ц"** or is stressed towards the end, add/replace **"ев or ёв"**.

Брат = братьев.

Край = краёв

All other nouns in the masculine gender form plurals by ending in **"ов"**.

Студент = студентов (students')

Мост = мостов

Feminine nouns

Those end in **"а"** simply drop it.

Газета = газет (newspapers')

Коса = кос

Those end in the consonant **"я"**, replace **"ь"**.

Those end in the vowel **"я"**, replace it with **"й"**

Стая = стай

Those end in "ь", replace "ей"

Печь = печей

Those end in double consonants, insert "о" and "е" just for **easier pronunciation**.

Марка = марок

Англичанка = англичанок

Девушка = девушек

Neuter case

Those end in "о", simply remove it.

Окно = окон

Those ends in "е", replaced "ей" and If ends in "ие" becomes "ий"

Море = морей

Plurals using numbers

Using numbers to denote plural form to show exactly how many nouns are there.

Those end 'один' (one) (i.e., 1, 21, 101, etc) use the case that is appropriate for the noun's position.

1 girl = **одна девушка**

I know *1 girl* = Я знаю **одну девушку**

21 roubles = **двадцать один рубль**

If 2, 3, or 4 is used or those ends with 2, 3, or 4 like 22, 33, 104, etc, except 12, 13, and 14, use the **genitive singular** case.

4 roubles = **четыре рубля**

Two books = **две книги**

3 newspapers = **три газеты**

Numbers that end 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, etc and 0 (нацать) use the **plural form of the genitive case**.

Five roubles = **пять рублей**

One hundred roubles = **сто рублей**

Eight buildings = **восемь зданий**

PRONOUNS

Я [ya] I

МЫ [mi] we

ТЫ [ti] you (*informal*)

ОН [on] he

ВЫ [vi] you (*plural*)

ОНА [ana] she

ВЫ [vi] you (*formal*)

ОНО [ano] it

In the Russian language, **pronouns** decline (change), following the case. **Singular personal pronouns**

The nominative case: Personal pronouns in the nominative case are always subjects in the sentence.

I. Me: **Я**

You: **Ты**

He, Him: **Он**

She, Her: **Она**

It: **Оно**

The Accusative case:

I. Me: **Меня**

You: **Тебя**

He, Him: **Его** /yevu/

She, Her: **Её**

It: **Его**

The Genitive case

I. Me: **Меня**

You: **Тебя**

He, Him: **Его**

She, Her: **Её**

It: **Его**

The Dative case

I. Me: **Мне**

You: **Тебе**

He, Him: **Ему**

She, Her: **Ей**

It: **Ему**

The Instrumental case

I. Me: **Мной**

You: **Тобой**

He, Him: **Им**

She, Her: **Ей**

It: **Им**

The Prepositional case

I. Me: **Мне**

You: **Тебе**

He, Him: **Нѐм**

She, Her: **Ней**

It: **Нѐм**

Plural personal pronouns

Nominative case

We, Us: **Мы**

You: **Вы**

They, Them: **Они**

Accusative case

We, Us: **Нас**

You: **Вас**

They, Them: **Их**

Genitive case

We, Us: **Нас**

You: **Вас**

They, Them: **Их**

Dative case

We, Us: **Нам**

You: **Вам**

They, Them: **Им**

Instrumental case

We, Us: **Нами**

You: **Вами**

They, Them: **Ими**

Prepositional case

We, Us: **Нас**

You: **Вас**

They, Them: **Них**

To sum up:



NOTE: For pronouns that start with a vowel, these may be preceded by “н” when using with a preposition.

Genitive case

У меня есть собака. *I have a dog.*

Accusative case

Я видел её вчера. *I saw her yesterday.*

Мой дядя попросил меня купить ему яблок.
My uncle asked me to buy him some apples.

Dative case:

Дай мне вон ту книгу. *Give me that book.*

Я покажу тебе фотографии. *I will show you the pictures.*

Instrumental case:

Этот стул сделан им. *This chair was made by him.*

Я не пойду в кино с тобой. *I won't go to the cinema with you.*

Prepositional case:

Давай поговорим о нас. *Let's talk about us.*

Some pronouns change their forms.

Ими = ними

Мы пойдем туда с ними. *We go there with them.*

Её = неё

У неё пять детей. - *She has five children.*

им = ним , ей = ней

Я поговорю с ним (с ней). *I will talk to her (to him).*

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

They are the pronouns of possession or ownership. Their genders are based on the nouns that these pronouns modify. In "my book" the noun "book" is feminine, so the possessive pronoun used is also in the feminine form, "Моя".

Singular possessive pronouns (1st person: My, Mine; 2nd person: Your, Yours)

Nominative case

1st person: Masculine: **Мой**, Feminine: **Моя**,
Neuter: **Моё**, Plural: **Мои**

2nd person Masculine: **Твой**, Feminine: **Твоя**,
Neuter: **Твоё**, Plural: **Твои**

Accusative case (animate)

1st person: Masculine: **Мой**, **Моего**, Feminine:
Мою, Neuter: **Моё**, Plural: **Мои**, **Моиx**

2nd person: Masculine: **Твой**, **Твоего**, Feminine:
Твою, Neuter: **Твоё**, Plural: **Твои**, **Твоиx**

Genitive case

1st person Masculine: **Моего**, Feminine: **Моей**
Neuter: **Моего**, Plural: **Моиx**

2nd person Masculine: **Твоего**, Feminine: **Твоей**
Neuter: **Твоего**, Plural: **Твоиx**

Dative case

1st person Masculine: **Моему**, Feminine: **Моей**
Neuter: **Моему**, Plural: **Моим**

2nd person Masculine: **Твоему**, Feminine: **Твоей**
Neuter: **Твоему**, Plural: **Твоим**

Instrumental case

1st person Masculine: **Моим**, Feminine: **Моей**

Neuter: **Моим**, Plural: **Моими**

2nd person Masculine: **Твоим**, Feminine: **Твоей**

Neuter: **Твоим**, Plural: **Твоими**

Prepositional case

1st person Masculine: **Моём**, Feminine: **Моей**

Neuter: **Моём**, Plural: **Моих**

2nd person Masculine: **Твоём**, Feminine: **Твоей**

Neuter: **Твоём**, Plural: **Твоих**

Note: regardless of what case the noun being modified is in for the 3rd person possessive pronoun, always use **Её** (for feminine) and **его** (for masculine and neuter).

Plural possessive pronoun (1st person: Our; 2nd person: Your, Yours)

Nominative case

1st person Masculine: **Наш**, Feminine: **Наша**

Neuter: **Наше**, Plural: **Наши**

2nd person Masculine: **Ваш**, Feminine: **Ваша**

Neuter: **Ваше**, Plural: **Ваши**

Accusative case

1st person Masculine: **Наш, Нашего**, Feminine: **Нашу**, Neuter: **Наше**, Plural: **Наши, Наших**

2nd person Masculine: **Ваш, Вашего**, Feminine: **Вашу**, Neuter: **Ваше**, Plural: **Ваши, Ваших**

Genitive case

1st person Masculine: **Нашего**, Feminine: **Нашей**
Neuter: **Нашего**, Plural: **Наших**

2nd person Masculine: **Вашего**, Feminine: **Вашей**
Neuter: **Вашего**, Plural: **Ваших**

Dative case

1st person Masculine: **Нашему**, Feminine: **Нашей**
Neuter: **Нашему**, Plural: **Нашим**

2nd person Masculine: **Вашему**, Feminine: **Вашей**
Neuter: **Вашему**, Plural: **Вашим**,

Instrumental case

1st person Masculine: **Нашим**, Feminine: **Нашей**
Neuter: **Нашим**, Plural: **Нашими**

2nd person Masculine: **Вашим**, Feminine: **Вашей**
Neuter: **Вашим**, Plural: **Вашими**

Prepositional case

1st person Masculine: **Нашем**, Feminine: **Нашей**
Neuter: **Нашем**, Plural: **Наших**

2nd person Masculine: **Вашем**, Feminine: **Вашей**
Neuter: **Вашем**, Plural: **Ваших**

***Note:** regardless of what case or gender of the noun being modified for the 3rd person plural possessive pronouns, “Их” is always used.*

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

Себя (-self): Он говорил о **себе** .He talked about **himself**.

Accusative case: Себя.

Genitive case: Себя

Dative case: Себе

Instrumental case: Себой

Prepositional case: Себе

Себой: Иван любит **свою** собаку.

Ivan loves **his own** dog.

The 1st and 2nd person often does not require this **reflexive possessive pronoun**. However, if the Subject of the sentence is “**Ты**”, then “**Свой**” is necessary. Then for *My own, her own, his own* in different cases we have:

Nominative case

Masculine: **Свой**

Feminine: **Своя**

Neuter: **Своё**

Plural: **Свои**

Accusative case (animate)

Masculine: **Свой, Своего**

Feminine: **Свою**

Neuter: **Своё**

Plural: **Свои, Своих**

Genitive case

Masculine: **Своего**

Feminine: **Своей**

Neuter: **Своего**

Plural: **Своих**

Dative case

Masculine: **Своему**

Feminine: **Своей**

Neuter: **Своему**

Plural: **Своим**

Instrumental case

Masculine: **Своим**

Feminine: **Своей**

Neuter: **Своим**

Plural: **Своими**

Prepositional case

Masculine: **Своём**

Feminine: **Своей**

Neuter: **Своём**

Plural: **Своих**

Сам (myself/ herself/ himself/ etc) use for more emphasis certain parts of a sentence so is optional and do not change the mening.

Я сделал: I did it.

Я сам сделал: I did it **myself**.

This pronoun also follows different changes according to its case, number and gender.

Nominative Case: Masculine: **Сам**, Feminine:

Сама, Neuter: **Само**, Plural: **Сами**

Accusative Case: Masculine: **Сам**, **Самого**,

Feminine: **Саму**, Neuter: **Само**, Plural: **Сами**,

Самих

Genitive Case: Masculine: **Самого**, Feminine:

Самой, Neuter: **Самого**, Plural: **Самих**

Dative Case: Masculine: **Самому**, Feminine:

Самой, Neuter: **Самому**, Plural: **Самим**

Instrumental Case: Masculine: **Самим**, Feminine:

Самой, Neuter: **Самим**, Plural: **Самими**

Prepositional Case: Masculine: **Самом**, Feminine:

Самой, Neuter: **Самом**, Plural: **Самих**

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

Use for pointing somting (*this, that*)

This (masculine, feminine, neuter and plural)

Nominative case: Этот, Эта, Это, Эти

Accusative case: Этот/Этого, Эту, Это, Эти /Этих

Genitive case: Этого, Этой, Этого, Этих

Dative case: Этому, Этой, Этому, Этим

Instrumental case: Этим, Этой, Этим, Этими

Prepositional case: Этом, Этой, Этом, Этих

That (masculine, feminine, neuter and plural)

Nominative case: Тот, Та, То, Те

Accusative case: Тот/Того, Ту, То, Те/Тех

Genitive case: Того, Той, Того, Тех

Dative case: Тому, Той, Тому, Тем

Instrumental case: Тем, Той, Тем, Теми

Prepositinal case: Том, Той, Том, Тех

DETERMINATIVE PRONOUNS

All (whole) (masculine, feminine, neuter and plural)

Nominative case: Весь, Вся, Всё, Все

Accusative case: Весь/Всего, Всю, Всё, Все/Всех

Genitive case: Всего, Всей, Всего, Всех

Dative case: Всему, Всей, Всему, Всем

Instrumental case: Всем, Всей, Всем, Всеми

Prepositional case: Всём, Всей, Всём, Всех

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS

Use for asking questions. The most common are "who" and "what". Their cases depends on their position in the sentence.

What

Nominative case: **Что**

Accusative case: **Что**

Genitive case: **Чего**

Dative case: **Чему**

Instrumental case: **Чем**

Prepositional case: **Чём**

Who

Nominative case: **Кто**

Accusative case: **Кого**

Genitive case: **Кого**

Dative case: **Кому**

Instrumental case: **Кем**

Prepositional case: **Ком**

VERBS

In general verbs have consonant stems, vowel stems and the ending.

Stems

The *consonant stem* is a verb stem that ends with a consonant; weak or strong.

Weak stems: those end in **в й н** or **м**.

Жи**в** = live

Плы**в** = swim, float, sail

Ста**н** = become, begin

Дела**й**, = do, make

Strong stems are those that end in all other consonants not given above.

Ид = go

Нёс = carry on foot

Мог = can, may

Грёб = row

The *vowel stem* is a verb stem that ends with a vowel.

Front-vowel stems are verb stems that end with “е” or “и”.

Смотре = watch, look

Говори = talk, tell

Виде = see

Купи = buy

Back-vowel stems are verb stems that end on **о, а,** or **у**.

Жда = wait-for

Верну = return

Писа = write

Коло = stick

The **present tense** comes in only one form.
Work, (be) working and do work all in one form.

The endings are based on subject in 1st or 2nd conjugation.

First conjugation: This form is common among verbs that end in "ть" and not usual for verbs ending in "ить". Removed the last 2 letters of the infinitive or nominative case. Then add, "ю", "ем", "ют", "ете" "ешь", or "ет".

Работать = work.

I work = Я работаю

You work (singular) = Ты работаешь

She, It, He works = Она, Оно, Он работает

We work = Мы работаем

You work (plural) = Вы работаете

They work = Они работают

Понимать = *understand*

I understand = Я понимаю

You understand (singular) = Ты понимаешь

It, She, He understands Оно, Она, Он Понимает

We understand = Мы понимаем

You understand (plural) = Вы понимаете

They understand = Они понимают

Знать = *know*

I know = **Я** знаю

You know (singular) **Ты** знаешь

It, She, He knows = **Оно, Она, Он** знает

We know = **Мы** знаем

You know (plural) = **Вы** знаете

They know = **Они** знают

Negative statements: add **не** (not):

I do **not** know = **Я** не знаю

I do not understand = **Я** не понимаю

He does not understand = **Он** не понимает

Questions: this make by having a question intonation so no change.

Do you know? = **Ты** знаешь?

Do you understand? = **Ты** понимаешь?

For the 1st conjugation verbs.

Я: add “**ю**”

Мы: add “**ём**”

Ты: add “**ёшь**”

Вы: add “**ёте**”

Он, она, оно: add “**ёт**”

Они: add “**ут**”

Стан ➔ стану = I will become

Жив ➔ живу = I live

Ид ➔ идёшь = you're going

Нёс ➔ несёт = he/she is carrying

Мог ➔ могут = they can

Back-vowel stems (unless the end vowel "а" is preceded by **ш ж ч** or **щ**.)

Жда- : ждёшь = you're waiting

Верну- : вернём = we will return

Писа- : пишет = (s) he's writing

Second conjugation

Verbs that end in "ить" in the infinitive or nominative case use second conjugation. This ending is changed with **ю, у, ит, ишь, им, ят, ат, ите**.

To speak = **говорить**

I speak = **Я говорю**

You speak (singular) = **Ты говоришь**

He, She, It Speaks = **Он, Она, Оно говорит**

We speak = **Мы говорим**

You speak (plural) = **Вы говорите**

They speak = **Они говорят**

To hear = **слышать**

I hear = **слышу**

You hear = **слышишь**

He, She, It hears = **слышит**

We hear = **слышим**

You hear = **слышите**

They hear = **слышат**

To have a better idea on how the conjugations work:

I speak English. **Я говорю по-английски**

He speaks Russian. **Он говорит по-русски**

Do you speak Russian? **Вы говорите по-русски?**

We don't speak Russian. **Мы не говорим по-русски**

Endings to forming the 2nd conjugation:

Я: add **-ю**

Мы: add **-им**

Ты: add **-ишь**

Вы: add **-ите**

Он она оно: add **-ит**

Они: add **-ят**

Front-vowel stems

Смотре (look), Купи (buy), Ходи (go)

Stems ending in "a" and preceded by hushes such as ш ж ч or щ

Слыша (hear), **Держа** (hold, keep), **Стуча** (knock)

Irregular Verbs

To go = **Ехать**

I go = **Я еду**

You go = **Ты едешь**

He, She, It goes = **Он, Она, Оно едет**

We go = **Мы едем**

You go = **Вы едете**

They go = **Они едут**

Жить (to live).

I live = **Я живу**

You live = **Ты живёшь**

He, She, It lives = **Он, Она, Оно живёт**

We live = **Мы живём**

You live = **Вы живёте**

They live = **Они живут**

PAST TENSE

For action has already occurred in the past. Add **-л** to the stem. Then add **-о** for neuter, **-а** for feminine.

There are no gender markers added for masculine singular form. In plural masculine, the gender marker added is **-и**.

С каза = say, tell:

(he/it said) он сказа**л**

(she/it said) она сказа**ла**

(it said) оно сказа**ло**

(they said) они сказа**ли**

INFINITIVE ENDINGS

Я хочу читать = I want to read.

The main verb should always be in the infinitive form when an auxiliary verb is part of the sentence.

я должна читать

If the verb ends with fixed consonants **г** or **к**, the consonant is dropped and **-чь** is added.

Мог = моч**ь**.

Пек = печ**ь** (to bake).

If the fixed consonant stem have end accents, such as **т**, **з**, **д**, **п**, and **б**, replaced them by **с** before adding **-ти** or **-ть**.

Вёд = вест**и** (to lead or to accompany).

Вёз = вез**ти** (to haul, carry by vehicle).

Греб = грест**и** (to row)

For consonant stems that end in **е**, the last letter is replaced with a **р** before adding **-еть**.

Уме = умер**еть** (to die)

IMPERATIVE ENDING

Use to give an order or a command.

For stems that end in **й** or have fixed stem accents (accents that always fall on the stem), add nothing. If the verb ends with a **vowel**, remove it. If the vowel is preceded by a soft consonant, insert **ь**.

Пьй = **пью**.

Пей молоко! Drink your milk!

Открой = **откры**.

Открой дверь! (Open the door!)

Делай = **делай**.

Делай это! (Do that!)

Постави = **постави**.

Поставь его сюда! (Put it here!)

If a fixed stem accent is present in the verb stem but the end consonant is part of a cluster of consonants add **-и**.

Помн = **помни**

Помни это! = Remember that!

Кончи = **кончи**

Кончи работу! Finish your work!

Говори- (**говоря**).

Говори! Speak (up)

When the accent is movable. Drop **у** and add **-и**.

Сказа- (скажу)

Скажи! = Tell!

Palatalization: If the consonant stem ends in **-а**, palatalization is done regardless if the last letter is **и** or not, as long as it is in the form **-а**.

Реза- = Режь(те) (Cut it!)

Сказа- = Скажи! (Tell me!)

Спрята- = Спрячь его! (Hide it! / Put it away)

Question words in Russian

Что? [shtoh] - What?

Кто? [ktoh] - Who?

Как? [kak] - How?

Когда? [kag-da] - When?

Сколько? [skol-ka] - How many/ how much?

Почему? [pa-chee-moo] - Why?

Зачем? [za-chem] - Why? (What for?)

Чей? [chey] - Whose?

Куда? [koo-da] - Where to?

Откуда? [at-koo-da] - Where from?

Кому? [ka-moo] - To whom?

Чему? [che-moo] - To what?

Чем? [chem] - By what?

Кем? [kem] - By who?

О чём? [ah chyom] - About what?

О ком? [ah kom] - About whom?

Чего? [chee-vo] - What (Genitive case)?

Кого? [ka-vo] - Whom?

Какой? [ka-koy] - What? Which?

Который? [ka-to-riy] - Which?

Почему = "why", while **зачем** = "for what" or "what for".

Зачем (для чего) тебе эта ручка? - Why do you need this pen? (*for what? what are you going to do with it?*)

Зачем ты взял мой телефон? - Why did you take my phone? (*for what purposes?*)

Зачем мы здесь? - Why are we here? (*for what? what are we going to do here?*)

Почему ты не пришел? - Why didn't you come?

Почему Земля круглая? - Why is the Earth round?

Почему у нас так мало денег? - Why do we have so little money?

какой and **который** also have the same meaning. It's almost true. But the word **какой** is much more common than **который**.

Что ты делаешь? - What are you doing?

Кто это? - Who is it?

Как ты сюда попал? - How did you get there?

Какой это этаж? - Which floor is it?

Откуда ты приехал? - Where did you come from?

Откуда ты это знаешь? - How do you know this?

*(Note that we don't use **как** [how] in this case, we use **откуда** [literally: where from?] instead).*

Где это? - Where is it?

Куда ты идешь? - Where are you going? (direction)

О чём вы говорите? - What are you talking about?

Красный террор
Как казнили Шириншо Шотемора, одного из первых руководителей советского Таджикистана → стр.8-9

Вечерний Душанбе
Еженедельная столичная газета

Цена чистой воды

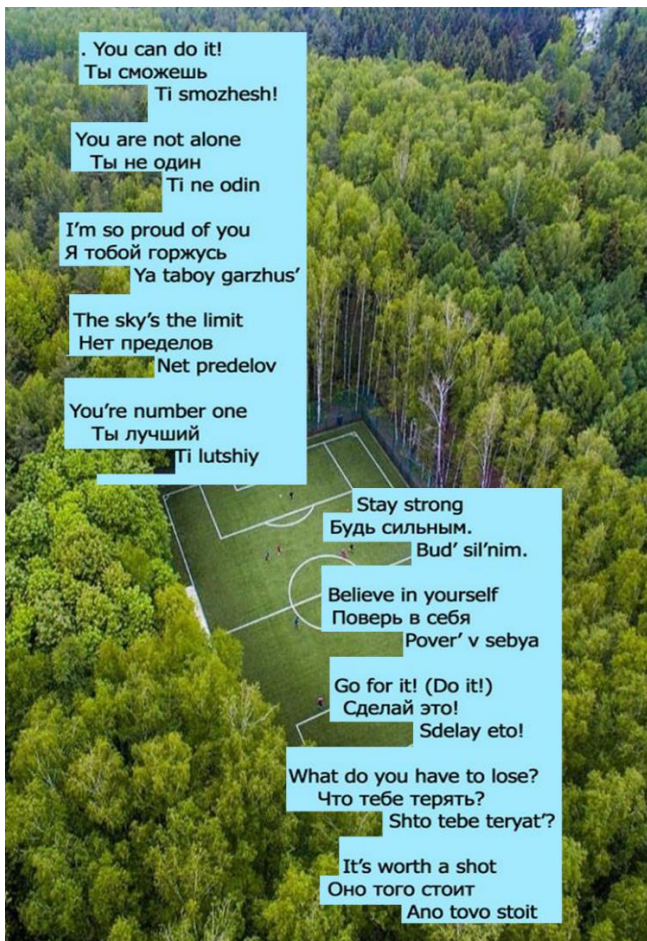
КУРС ВАЛЮТ
\$ — 4,3900
€ — 6,4505
10 р.руб. — 1,4480

№ 39 (618)
24 сентября 2009 года
Изд. тира: 238-52-46
E-mail: vd@tadgiston.com
Web-site: www.gazeta.tj
Регистрация в Минюсте 1999-1999

Куда исчезло мясо
Перед праздниками мясо перешло в разряд дефицитных товаров

Горячая линия «Вечерки» раба
Тепла на всех не з

Radial Ozodi (RFE/RL)



. You can do it!
Ты сможешь
Ti smozhesh!

You are not alone
Ты не один
Ti ne odin

I'm so proud of you
Я тобой горжусь
Ya taboy garzhus'

The sky's the limit
Нет пределов
Net predelov

You're number one
Ты лучший
Ti lutshiy

Stay strong
Будь сильным.
Bud' sil'nim.

Believe in yourself
Поверь в себя
Pover' v sebya

Go for it! (Do it!)
Сделай это!
Sdelay eto!

What do you have to lose?
Что тебе терять?
Shto tebe teryat'?

It's worth a shot
Оно того стоит
Ano tovo stoit

Russian Possessive Pronouns			
<i>Nominative</i>			
Masculine Singular	Feminine Singular	Neuter Singular	All Genders (Plural)
мой	моя	моё	мои
наш	наша	наше	наши
<i>Accusative</i>			
Masculine Singular	Feminine Singular	Neuter Singular	All Genders (Plural)
мой (моего)	мою	моё	мои (моих)
наш (нашего)	нашу	наше	наши (наших)
<i>Genitive</i>			
Masculine Singular	Feminine Singular	Neuter Singular	All Genders (Plural)
моего	моей	моего	моих
нашего	нашей	нашего	наших
<i>Dative</i>			
Masculine Singular	Feminine Singular	Neuter Singular	All Genders (Plural)
моему	моей	моему	моим
нашему	нашей	нашему	нашим
<i>Instrumental</i>			
Masculine Singular	Feminine Singular	Neuter Singular	All Genders (Plural)
моим	моей	моим	моими
нашим	нашей	нашим	нашими
<i>Prepositional</i>			
Masculine Singular	Feminine Singular	Neuter Singular	All Genders (Plural)
моём	моей	моём	моих
нашем	нашей	нашем	наших

Russian Personal Pronouns				
Nominative				
1st Person Singular	2nd Person Singular	3rd Person Singular		
я (I)	ты / вы (you)	он (he)	она (she)	оно (it)
1st Person Plural	2nd Person Plural	3rd Person Plural		
мы (we)	вы (you)	они (they)		
Accusative				
1st Person Singular	2nd Person Singular	3rd Person Singular		
меня	тебя / вас	(н)его	(н)её	(н)его
1st Person Plural	2nd Person Plural	3rd Person Plural		
нас	вас	(н)их		
Genitive				
1st Person Singular	2nd Person Singular	3rd Person Singular		
меня	тебя / вас	(н)его	(н)её	(н)его
1st Person Plural	2nd Person Plural	3rd Person Plural		
нас	вас	(н)их		
Dative				
1st Person Singular	2nd Person Singular	3rd Person Singular		
мне	тебе	(н)ему	(н)ей	(н)ему
1st Person Plural	2nd Person Plural	3rd Person Plural		
нам	вам	(н)им		
Instrumental				
1st Person Singular	2nd Person Singular	3rd Person Singular		
мной	тобой	(н)им	(н)ей	(н)им
1st Person Plural	2nd Person Plural	3rd Person Plural		
нами	вами	(н)ими		
Prepositional				
1st Person Singular	2nd Person Singular	3rd Person Singular		
мной	тобой	(н)им	(н)ей	(н)им
1st Person Plural	2nd Person Plural	3rd Person Plural		
нами	вами	(н)ими		

Russian Verbs and Tenses					
Subject		Present	Past	Future	Past Perfective
I	Я	читаю	читал(а)	прочитаю	прочитал(а)
You	Ты	читаешь		прочитаешь	
He	Он	читает	читал	прочитает	прочитал
She	Она		читала		прочитала
It	Оно		читало		прочитало
We	Мы	читаем	читали	прочитаем	прочитали
You	Вы	читаете		прочитаете	
Them	Они	читают		прочитают	
Subject		Present	Past	Future	Past Perfective
I	Я	люблю	любил(а)	полюбю	полюбил(а)
You	Ты	любишь		полюбишь	
He	Он	любит	любил	полюбит	полюбил
She	Она		любила		полюбила
It	Оно		любило		полюбило
We	Мы	любим	любили	полюбим	полюбили
You	Вы	любите		полюбите	
Them	Они	любят		полюбят	

This example belongs to verbs with the 'е' conjugation.

This example belongs to verbs with the 'и' conjugation.

Gender in Russian Nouns and Adjectives			
Singular Nouns	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
	Words ending with a consonant i.e. Б, Г, Д, Ж, З, Й, К, Л, М, Н, П, Р, С, Т, У, Ф, Х, Ц, Ч, Ш, Щ, Ъ, Э, Ю Exceptions: кофе - masculine <i>Precious Tip: Words ending with the 'b' sign is masculine 90% of the time.</i>	Words ending with an 'А' or a 'Я' i.e. Мама, неделя, сумка, подруга Exceptions: имя - neuter	Words ending with an 'О' or an 'Е' i.e. вино, море, евро, метро, кино, окно
	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
	When words end with the following letters: i.e. Б, Г, Д, Ж, З, Й, К, Л, М, Н, П, Р, С, Т, У, Ф, Х, Ц, Ч, Ш, Щ, Ъ, Э, Ю the word should always end with an 'bl' to show that it is a plural. i.e. сыны, сыры, рублы	When words end with an 'А' or a 'Я' Replace 'А' with 'Ы' Replace 'Я' with 'И' to show that it is a plural. i.e. мамы, недели	When words end with an 'О' or an 'Е' Replace 'О' with 'А' Replace 'Е' with 'Я' to show that it is a plural. i.e. моря, окна
Plural Nouns	Exceptional rules for plurals		
	When words end with the letters: К, Г, Х	When words end with the letters: Ш, Щ, Ч, Ц, Ж	
	with be replaced by 'И' to show that it is plural.		
Adjectives	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
	Should always end with 'ИЙ' to show that it is an adjective. unless the word ends with either: К, Г, Х, Ш, Щ, Ч, Ц, Ж then the adjective shall end with an 'ИЙ' i.e. Интересный урок	Should always end with 'АЯ' i.e. Интересная книга	Should always end with 'ОЕ' i.e. Интересное слово
	Plural		
	Should always end with 'ИЕ' i.e. Интересные газеты		

Числа и основная математика

Chisla i osnovnaya matematika

Numbers and basic mathematics

Математические головоломки 130 книг



/Matematicheskiye golovolomki 130 knigakh/

Math Puzzles "in 130 books

Кардиналы России

Kardinaly Rossii

Russian cardinal numbers

0	Ноль / Нуль	(nol' / nool')
1/2	Половина / Пол-	(pa-la-VEE-na / pol-)
1	Один	(a-DEEN)
2	Два	(dva)
3	Три	(tree)
4	Четыре	(chi-TIYR-ye)
5	Пять	(pyat')
6	Шесть	(shyest')
7	Семь	(syem')
8	Восемь	(VO-sim')
9	Девять	(DYE-vit')
10	Десять	(DYE-sit')
11	Одиннадцать	(a-DEEN-na-tsats')
12	Двенадцать	(dvi-NA-tsats')
13	Тринадцать	(tri-NA-tsats')
14	Четырнадцать	(chi-TIYR-na-tsats')
15	Пятнадцать	(pit-NA-tsats')
16	Шестнадцать	(shis-NA-tsats')
17	Семнадцать	(sim-NA-tsats')
18	Восемнадцать	(va-sim-NA-tsats')
19	Девятнадцать	(di-vit-NA-tsats')
20	Двадцать	(DVA-tsats')

21	Двадцать Один	(DVA-tsat' a-DEEN)
22	Двадцать Два	(DVA-tsat' DVA)
30	Тридцать	(TREE-tsat')
40	Сорок	(SO-rak)
50	Пятьдесят	(pit'-di-SYAT)
60	Шестьдесят	(shis'-di-SYAT)
70	Семьдесят	(SYEM'-di-syat)
80	Восемьдесят	(VO-sim'-di-syat)
90	Девяносто	(di-vi-NO-sta)
100	Сто	(sto)
101	Сто один	(sto a-DEEN)
102	Сто два	(sto DVA)
200	Двести	(DVYE-sti)
300	Триста	(TREE-sta)
400	Четыреста	(chi-TIYR-i-sta)
500	Пятьсот	(pit'-SOT)
600	Шестьсот	(shis'-SOT)
700	Семьсот	(sim'-SOT)
800	Восемьсот	(va-sim'-SOT)
900	Девятьсот	(di-vit'-SOT)
1000	Тысяча	(TIY-si-cha)
10,000	Десять тысяч	(DYE-sit' TIY-sich)
100,000	Сто тысяч	(STO TIY-sich)
1,000,000	Один миллион	(a-deen mi-li-ON)
1,000,000,000	Один миллиард	(a-deen mi-li-ART)

Российские порядковый номера

/rossiyskiye poryadkovyy nomera/

Russian ordinal numbers

1st	Первый	(PYER-viy)
2nd	Второй	(fta-ROY)
3rd	Третий	(TRE-tiy)
4th	Четвёртый	(chit-VYOR-tiy)
5th	Пятый	(PYA-tiy)
6th	Шестой	(shis-TOY)
7th	Седьмой	(sid'-MOY)
8th	Восьмой	(vas'-MOY)
9th	Девятый	(di-VYA-tiy)
10th	Десятый	(di-SYA-tiy)
11th	Одиннадцатый	(a-DEEN-na-tsa-tiy)
12th	Двенадцатый	(dvi-NA-tsa-tiy)
13th	Тринадцатый	(tri-NA-tsa-tiy)
14th	Четырнадцатый	(chi-TIYR-na-tsa-tiy)
15th	Пятнадцатый	(pit-NA-tsa-tiy)
16th	Шестнадцатый	(shis-NA-tsa-tiy)
17th	Семнадцатый	(sim-NA-tsa-tiy)
18th	Восемнадцатый	(va-sim-NA-tsa-tiy)
19th	Девятнадцатый	(di-vit-NA-tsa-tiy)
20th	Двадцатый	(dva-TSA-tiy)

21st	двадцать первый	(DVA-tsat' PYER-viy)
22nd	двадцать второй	(DVA-tsat' fta-ROY)
23rd	двадцать третий	(DVA-tsat' TRYE-tiy)
24th	двадцать четвёртый	(DVA-tsat' chit-VYOR-tiy)
25th	двадцать пятый	(DVA-tsat' PYA-tiy)
26th	двадцать шестой	(DVA-tsat' shi-STOY)
27th	двадцать седьмой	(DVA-tsat' sid'-MOY)
28th	двадцать восьмой	(DVA-tsat' vas'-MOY)
29th	двадцать девятый	(DVA-tsat' di-VYA-tiy)
30th	Тридцатый	(tri-TSA-tiy)
31st	тридцать первый	(TREE-tsat' PYER-viy)
40th	Сороковой	(sa-ra-ka-VOY)
50th	Пятидесятый	(pi-ti-di-SYA-tiy)
60th	Шестидесятый	(shi-sti-di-SYA-tiy)
70th	Семидесятый	(si-mi-di-SYA-tiy)
80th	Восьмидесятый	(vas'-mi-di-SYA-tiy)
90th	Девяностый	(di-vi-NOS-tiy)
100th	Сотый	(SO-tiy)
1,000th	Тысячный	(TIY-sich-niy)
1,000,000th	Миллионный	(mi-li-ON-niy)

Genders and Plurals with Russian Numerals

You know that nouns in Russian generally have gender, number and case.

один	два	три	четыре	пять
odin	dva	tri	chetire	pyat'
1	2	3	4	5

шесть	семь	восемь	девять	десять
shest'	sem'	vosem'	devyat'	decyat'
6	7	8	9	10

1 and 2 have genders. The number one takes three different forms for gender.

Masculine: один

Feminine: одна

Neuter: одно

The number two only takes two different forms.

Masculine/Neuter: два

Feminine: две

We say :

Один рубль = *one ruble*

Два рубля = *two rubles*

Рубль is a masculine noun and the number is matched. Instead;

Одна копейка = *one kopeck*

Две копейки = *two kopecks*

Копейка, is a feminine noun and the number is matched as well.

Одно число = *one number*

Два числа = *two numbers*

Число is a neuter noun and the number is matched.

There are two different types of plurals. The first kind of plural is only used with numbers two through four, and the other one is used for everything after that.

From above **рубля**, **копейки** and **числа** are written in this first type of plural and also;

Три доллара (three dollars)

Два года (two years)

Note: The two nouns above are masculine, and their default masculine singular forms end in consonants. If a masculine noun ends in a consonant in the singular, all you have to do to put it in the genitive singular is to add **-а**.

If a neuter noun ends in **о**, take away the **о** and add **-а**.

Одно слово (one word)

Два слова (two words)

If a masculine noun ends in **й** or **ь**, or a neuter noun ends in **е**, then you take away them and add **-я**.

Один чай (one tea)

Два чая (two teas)

For feminine nouns ending in **ь**, remove it and add **-и**.

Одна вещь (one thing)

Две вещи (two things)

For feminine nouns ending in **а**, remove it and insert **-ы**, unless there's **к, г, х, ж** or **ш** at the end, then add **-и**.

Одна вода (one water)

Две воды (two waters)

The genitive plural

Many masculine nouns ending in a consonant take
-ов in the genitive plural:

Пять доллар**ов** (five dollars)

Шесть подарк**ов** (six gifts)

If they end in **й**, remove it and replace **-ев** / **-ёв**.

Один чай (one tea)

Десять чаё**в** (ten teas)

Masculine nouns ending in **ж, ч, ш, щ** remove them and replace **-ей**. If feminine/masculine nouns ending in **ь** first remove it.

Один рубль (one ruble)

Семь рубл**ей** (seven rubles)

Feminine nouns end in **а** and neuter nouns end in **о**, drop them:

Одна вода (one water)

Восемь вод (eight waters)

Some nouns such as "year" is different in genitive plural:

Один год (one year)

Два года (two years)

Десять лет (ten years)

Use **лет** when talking about age:

Мне двадцать лет. (I am twenty years old.)

Totally; Russian numbers may be cardinal or ordinal. The number **один** (one) has different gender characteristics according to the gender of the noun it modifies. The number **два** (two) has two forms in Nominative: **два** for masculine and neuter nouns and **две** for feminine ones. Russian numbers change according to the case they are used in (say, **три** (three) **часа**, **трёх часов**, **трём часам...**). After cardinal Russian numbers nouns may be used in the Nominative singular (with numbers ending in "**один**", like 21), Genitive singular (with those ending in "**два**", "**три**", "**четыре**", like in 22, 23, 24) and Genitive plural (with numbers ending in other figures: 5-20, 25-30 etc.). Ordinal Russian numbers change in gender, number, and case (**первый день**,

первая любовь, первое свидание, первые стихи; с первого дня...).

время vremya • time



С трёх до пяти.

Three to five.

С утра до вечера.

From morning to evening.

С....ДО
С....ПО

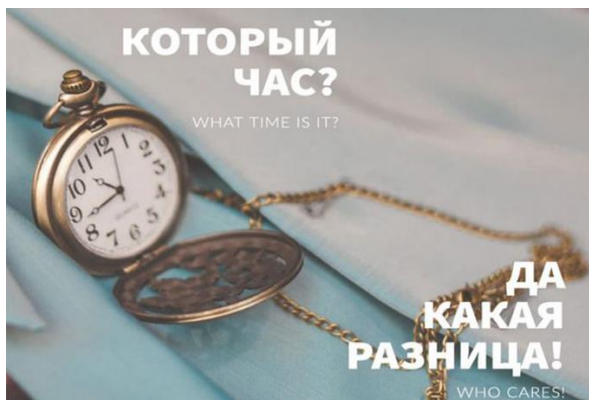
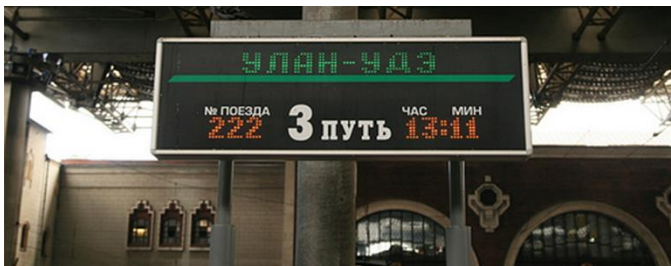
С декабря по январь.

From December to January.

С понедельника по пятницу.

Monday through Friday.

Remember Russian ordinal numbers behave exactly as adjectives in a sentence. This is why they change their case according to the case of the noun to which they belong.



Telling the time in Russian

Сколько времени? [skol'ka vremeni] (What time is it?)

Час. [chas] (It's one o'clock.)

Два часа. [dva chasa] (It's two o'clock.)

Три часа. [tri chasa] (It's three o'clock.)

Половина седьмого. [palavina sed'mova] -

(It's half past six.), пол- is more common in everyday speaking than

половина: полседьмого [polsed'mova] - (half past six),

полвосьмого [polvos'mova] - (half past seven), etc.

Пять минут третьего. [pyat' minut tretyego] (It's five past two.)

Без десяти двенадцать. [bez desyati dvenadtsat'] - (It's ten to 12.)

Шестнадцать сорок пять [shesnatsat' sorak pyat'] - (It's 16:45.)



Note: capital letters show stresses.

What time it is?

Сколько времени

/SKOLka VREmeni/

Который час

/kaTORiy CHAS/.

Сколько время

/SKOL'ka VREmya/

Извините, вы не подскажете, сколько времени?

(izviNEEte, vy ne patSKAzhytye, SKOLka VREmeni)
Excuse me, could you (please) tell me what time it is?

Маш, сколько время там?

(MASH, SKOL'ka VRYEmya tam)

- Masha, what time is it?

Простите, вы не подскажете, который час?

(prasTEEtye, vy ne patSKAzhetye, kaTOriy CHAS)

Excuse me, could you (please) tell me what time it is?

Два сорок /DVA SOrak/ two-forty

For *1 o'clock*, you can still say the hour and the minutes but instead of **один** (aDEEN), meaning **one**, say **час** (CHAS), which means **hour**.

Час двадцать /CHAS DVATsat/ one-twenty

Часа /chaSA/ or часов /chaSOF/ = hours

Минута /meeNOOta/or минут /meeNOOT/ = minutes.

Три часа тринадцать минут

/TREE chaSA pytNATsat meeNOOT/

Three hours fifteen minutes.

Двадцать один час и одна минута

/DVATsat' aDEEN chas ee adNA meeNOOta/

Twenty one hours and one minute.

For quarter past the hour:

пятнадцать минут + hour or **четверть** + hour.

Note: the hour is an ordinal number in the genitive case.

Пятнадцать минут третьего.

/pytNATsat miNOOT TRETyeva/

fifteen minutes of the third (Fifteen minutes past three)

Четверть первого

/CHETvert PERvava/

Quarter past one. (a quarter of the first)

For half past the hour:

половина + hour or **пол** + hour.

Note: The abbreviated пол- becomes the beginning of the word: пол+hour.

Половина пятого

/palaVEEena PYAtava/

Half-past four (half of the fifth)

Полседьмого

/polsyd'MOva/

Half-past six (half of the seventh)

In all other cases, if the time is before the 30-minute: **минута /минут + hour**. We use **genitive case** of ordinal numbers.

Ord Num	Nominative	Genitive
1st	первый	первого
2nd	второй	второго
3rd	третий	третьего
4th	четвёртый	четвёртого
5th	пятый	пятого
6th	шестой	шестого
7th	седьмой	седьмого
8th	восьмой	восьмого
9th	девятый	девятого
10th	десятый	десятого
11th	одиннадцатый	одиннадцатого
12th	двенадцатый	двенадцатого

For after the 30-minute: **без** /BYEZ/ *without*.+ minutes left + hour (in its neutral state) .For quarter

to an hour, is the same, just replace the number of the minutes with **без четверти** /bez CHETverti/, *without a quarter, or quarter to*.

Без двадцати четыре

bez dvatsaTEE cheTYre

Twenty to four

Без четверти шесть

/bez CHETverti SHEST'/

Quarter to six (six without a quarter)

We need **genitive forms of the cardinal numbers** for the minutes.

CardNum	Gen Fem	Pronc
1	одной	adNOY
2	двух	dvooh
3	трёх	tryoh
4	четырёх	chytyRYOH
5	пяти	pyTEE
6	шести	shysTEE
7	семи	syMEE
8	восьми	vasMEE
9	девяти	dyvyeTEE
10	десяти	dysyeTEE
11	одиннадцать	aDEEnatsutee
12	двенадцати	dvyNATsutee

13	тринадцати	triNATsutee
14	четырнадцати	chyTYRnatsutee
15	пятнадцати	pytNATsutee
16	шестнадцати	shysNATsutee
17	семнадцати	symNATsutee
18	восемнадцати	vasymNATsutee
19	девятнадцати	dyvyetNATsutee
20	двадцати	dvatsuTEE

For 21 to 29 (minutes): **двадцати** + the genitive form of the numbers 1 to 9.

For 24-hour system, you will need to add **час** (CHAS), **часа** (chaSAH) or **часов** (chaSOF) *o'clock*. You may hear **ноль ноль** (nol' nol'), meaning zero zero.

Час is only used after 1 o'clock and 21 o'clock:
один час /aDEEN CHAS/ *one o'clock*

The word **один** can be dropped without changing the meaning when saying one o'clock:

Час ночи /CHAS NOchi/ *1 a.m.*

Час дня /CHAS DNYA/ *1 p.m.*

Часа is used after the numbers between 2 and 4.
For numbers between 5 and 12, use **часов**
/chaSOF/.

Двадцать один час

/DVATsat' aDEEN chas/

Twenty-one o'clock / 9 p.m.

Двадцать четыре часа

(DVATsat' chyTYre chaSA)

Twenty-four o'clock/midnight

Пять часов

/pyat' chaSOF/ Five o'clock.

Тринадцать ноль ноль

/triNATsat' NOL' NOL'/

Thirteen o'clock (zero zero)

**Двенадцать ночи, двенадцать часов ночи,
полночь**

/dvyNATsat' NOchi, dvyNATsat chaSOF NOchi, POLnach/

12 a.m./midnight, 12 o'clock

Час ночи /chas NOchi/ 1 a.m., one a.m.

**Два ночи, два часа ночи, два утра, два часа
утра**

/dva NOchi, dva chaSA NOchi, dva ootRA, dva chaSA

ootRA/

2 a.m. two a.m.

Пять вечера, пять часов вечера

/pyat VYEchera, pyat chaSOF VYEchera/

5 p.m. Five p.m., five o'clock in the afternoon.

Use the 24-hour format or add morning, day,
evening, or night to the 12-hour format. Полдень

Pold'in Midday

Полночь *Polnach* Midnight

Related words

Час *chas* hour

Минута *minuta* minute

Утро *utro* morning

День *den* day

Вечер *vecher* evening

Ночь *noch* night

Половина *polovina* half an hour to

Пол *pol* here half an hour to

Четверть *chetvert* quarter past

Без четверти *bez chetverti* quarter to

Без... мин *ут... bez... minut...*

without... minutes to...

Ровно *rovno* exactly

Почти *pochti* almost

Сейчас 7:23 /Seychas sem' dvadtsat' tri/ *Now it is 7:23.*

Давай встретимся в шесть

/Davay vstretimsya v shest/

let's meet at six o'clock.

У нас будет встреча в 8 утра по Москве

/U nas budet vstrecha v vosem' utra po Moskve/

We'll have a meeting at eight a.m. Moscow time.

Мне кто-то позвонил в час ночи

/Mne kto-to pozvonil v chas nochil/

somebody called me at one a.m

Пойдем на обед в половине первого?

/Poydyom na obed v polovine pervogo/

Let's go for lunch half an hour to one.

В полседьмого у меня тренировка

/V poldsed'mogo u menya trenerovka/

I'm having a workout at half an hour to seven.

Давай встретимся у входа в кафе в четверть третьего

/Davay vstretimsya u vkhoda v kafe v chetvert' tret'yego/

let's meet near the coffeshop entrance at 2:15.

Без четверти четыре я был уже на месте

/Bez chetverti chetyre ya byl uzhe na mestel/

I was already there a quarter to four."

Сейчас ровно десять

Seychas rovno desyat

It's ten o'clock sharp.

Сейчас уже почти три

/Seychas uzhe pochti tri/

it's already almost three o'clock.



12 часов дня
(полдень)



13 часов или
1 час дня



14 часов или
2 часа дня



15 часов или
3 часа дня



16 часов или
4 часа дня



17 часов или
5 часов вечера



18 часов или
6 часов вечера



19 часов или
7 часов вечера



20 часов или
8 часов вечера



21 час или
9 часов вечера



22 часа или
10 часов вечера



23 часа или
11 часов вечера

Date

Day/month/year is the pattern and use Ordinal numbers and also use the Genitive case for the name of the month and the number of the year.

годы *gody* • **years**

1900, 1901, 1910, 2000, 2001

тысяча девятьсот первый *tysyacha devyat'sot perviy* ,

тысяча девятисотый *tysyacha devyatisotiy* ,

тысяча девятьсот десятый *tysyacha devyat'sot desyatiy*

двухтысячный *dvukhtysyachniy* • **two thousand**

две тысячи первый *dve tysyachi perviy* ,

Первое января две тысячи третьего года

/pervoye yanvarya dve tysyachi tret'yego goda/

The first of January 2003.

**Двадцать третье февраля тысяча девятьсот
восемьдесят четвертого года**

*dvadtsat' tret'ye fevralya tysyacha devyat'sot vosem'desyat
chetvyortogo goda*

The twenty-third of February 1984

**Седьмое октября тысяча девятьсот пятьдесят
второго года = 07.10.1952**

Девятое мая тысяча девятьсот сорок пятого

года= 09.05.1945

Order and age

Кто двадцать седьмой по списку?

Kto dvadtsat' sed'moy po spisku?

Who is 27th on the list?

Я родился в тысяча девятьсот девяносто первом году

Ya rodilsya v tysyacha devyat'sot devyanosto pervom godu

I was born in 1991.

Phone numbers

Девятьсот десять = 910

/devyat'sot desyat/

сто тридцать один – пятьдесят семь – сорок два = 131-57-42.

/sto tridtsat' odin – pyat'desyat sem' – sorok dva /

ноль семь /nol' sem'/, = 07

+7=pronounced as **плюс семь** / *plyus sem*/.

8 (919) 764-09-18

Восемь, девятьсот девятнадцать, семсот

шестьдесят четыре, ноль девять,

восемнадцать

/vosem', devyat'sot devyatnadsat', sem'sot shest'desyat

chetyre, nol' devyat', vosemnadtsat' /

8 (985) 721-31-69

**Восемь, девятьсот восемьдесят пять, семьсот
двадцать один, тридцать один, шестьдесят
девять**

/vosem', devyat'sot vosem'desyat pyat', sem'sot dvadtsat'
odin, tridtsat' Odin, shest'desyat devyat/

Prices

Рубль (₽) /rubl/ = ruble is Russian currency. Every (₽) = 100 **копейка** /kopeyka/ = kopeck; Russian coin. For price you must use Cardinal Numbers then, the forms of, **рубль** and **копейка** will change according to the number before them. The most common forms are **рублей** /rubley/ (rubles) and **копеек** /kopeyek/ (kopecks).

1 ₽ = один рубль (*odin rubl'*)

2 ₽ = два рубля (*dva rublya*)

3 ₽ = три рубля (*tri rublya*)

11 ₽ — одиннадцать рублей (*odinadtsat' rubley*)

12 ₽ — двенадцать рублей (*dvenadtsat' rubley*)

21 ₽ — двадцать один рубль (*dvadtsat' odin rubl'*)

32 ₽ — тридцать два рубля (*tridtsat' dva rublya*)

143 ₽ — сто сорок три рубля (*sto sorok tri rublya*)

1354 Р — тысяча триста пятьдесят четыре рубля
(*tysyacha trista pyat' desyat chetyre rublya*)

1 копецк = одна копейка (*odna kopeyka*)

2 kopecks = две копейки (*dve kopeyki*)

Суп стоит двести тридцать рублей

/Sup stoit dvesti tridsat' rubley/

the soup costs 230 rubles.

С вас две тысячи двести рублей

/S vas dve tysyachi dvesti rubley/

you need to pay 2200 rubles.

Математика /matematika/ math

Простая математика simple math

/prostaya matematika/

Число /chislo/ number

Число 11 и 17 - простые числа.

Chislo odinnadtsat' i semnadtsat' - prostyye chisla.

The numbers 11 and 17 are both prime numbers.

Нечётный /nechyotnyy/ odd

Число 11 является примером нечётного числа.

/Chislo 11 yavlyayetsya primerom nechyotnogo chisla/

the number 11 is an example of an odd number.

чётный /chyotnyy/ even

Число 8 является примером четного числа.

/Chislo 8 yavlyayetsya primerom chyotnogo chisla/

the number 8 is an example of an even number.

Плюс /plyus/ plus

Один плюс один равно двум.

/Odin plyus odin ravno dvum./

One plus one is two.

Минус /minus/ minus

Восемь минус один равно семь.

/Vosem' minus odin ravno sem'./

Eight minus one is seven.

Умножение /umnozhenie/ times/multiply

Три умножить на три будет девять.

Tri umnozhit' na tri budet devyat'.

Three times three is nine.

Делить /delit'/ divide

Десять разделить на два равно пять.

Desyat' razdelit' na dva ravno pyat'.

Ten divided by two is five.

Равняться /ravnyat'sya/ equal

Пять плюс пять равно десять.

Pyat' plyus pyat' ravno desyat'.

Five plus five equals ten.

Точка /tochka/ point

Одна целая три сотых.

Odna tselaya tri sotykh.

One point zero three

Процент /protsent/ percent

**Пятьдесят процентов от двенадцати
будет шесть.**

Pyadesyat pratsentaf at dvenatsati budet shest'.

Fifty percent of twelve is six.

Остаток /ostatok/ remainder

**Если вы разделите четырнадцать на три, то
коэффициент будет четыре с остатком два.**

Esli vy razdelite chetyrnadtsat' na tri, to koeffitsient
budet chetyre s ostatkom dva.

*If you divide fourteen by three, the quotient is four
with a remainder of two.*

Формула /formula/ formula

**Знаете ли вы формулу для вучесления
объема круга?**

Znayete li vy formulu dlya vychesleniya ob'yema kruga?

*Do you know the formula for the volume of a
sphere?*

Уравнение /uravneniye/ equation

Студент решил уравнение.

Student reshil uravneniye.

The student solved the equation.

Переменная /peremennaya/ variable

В математических задачах, переменные, как правило, представлены буквами "х" и "у".

V matematicheskikh zadachakh, peremennye, kak pravilo, predstavleny bukvami "x" i "y".

In math problems, the variables are usually represented by the letters "x" and "y."

Решение /resheniye/ solution

Если мы упростим уравнение, то решение очевидно.

Esli my uprostim uravneniye, to resheniye ochevidno.

If we simplify the equation, the solution is obvious.

Функция /funktsiya/ function

Функция представляет собой отношения между двумя переменными.

Funktsiya predstavlyayet soboy otnosheniya mezhdu dvumya peremennymi.

A function represents the relationship between two variables.

Вычислять /vychislyat'/ calculate

Ты можешь посчитать стоимость продуктов?

Ty mozhesh' poschitat' stoimost' produktov?

Can you calculate the cost of the groceries?

Четверть /chetvert'/ fourth

При пересчете в дробь, семьдесят пять процентов становится тремя четвертями.

Pri pereschete v drob', sem'desyat pyat' protsentov stanovitsya tremq chetvertyami.

When converted into a fraction, seventy-five percent becomes three-fourths.

Половина /polovina/ half

Согласно рецепту нужно полторы чайных ложек сахара.

Soglasno retseptu nuzhno poltory chainykh lozhek sakhara.

The recipe called for one and a half teaspoons of sugar.

Счет и знание чисел.

Counting and recognising numbers.

Ноль, один, два, три ... до двадцати и далее.

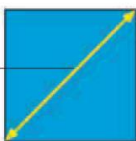
Zero, one, two, three... to twenty and beyond

Ни одного *None*
Сколько...? *How many...?*

геометрические фигуры

GEOMETRIC SHAPES

диагональ
diagonal'
diagonal



квадрат
kvadrat
square



прямоугольник
pyamougol'nik
rectangle

угол
ugol
angle



треугольник
treugol'nik
triangle

гипотенуза
gipotenуza
hypotenuse



параллелограмм
paralelogram
parallelogram



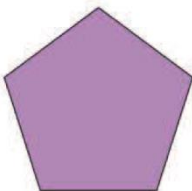
овал
oval
oval



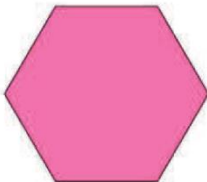
ромб
romb
rhombus



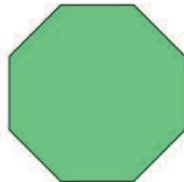
трапеция
trapetsiya
trapezoid



пятиугольник
pyatiugol'nik
pentagon



шестиугольник
shestiugol'nik
hexagon



восьмиугольник
vos'miugol'nik
octagon

геометрические тела geometricheskiye tela • solids



конус
konus
cone

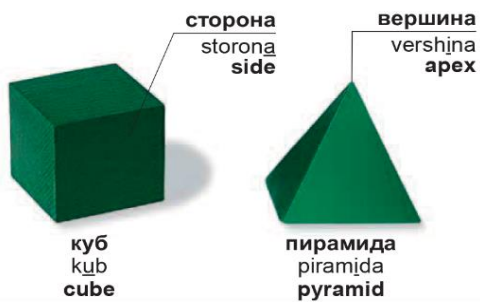
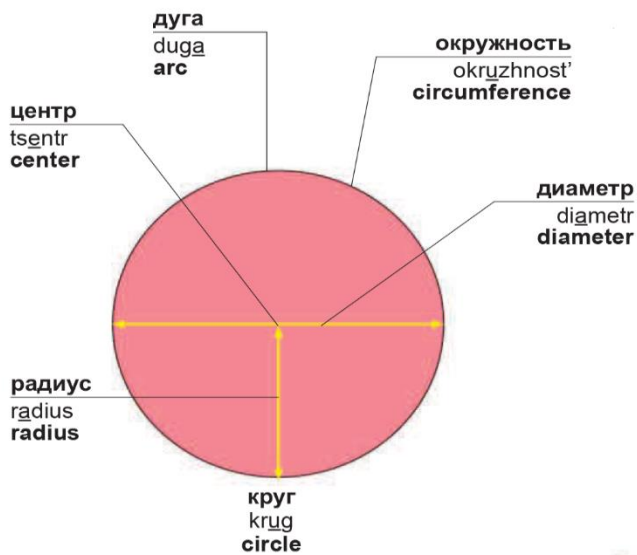
основание
osnovaniye
base



цилиндр
tsilindr
cylinder



шар
shar
sphere



линии linii • lines



прямая
pryamaya
straight



параллельная
paralel'naya
parallel



перпендикулярная
perpendikulyarnaya
perpendicular



кривая
krivaya
curved

измерения izmereniya • measurements



объём
ob-yom
volume

числитель
chislytel'
numerator

знаменатель
znamenatel'
denominator

$\frac{1}{2}$

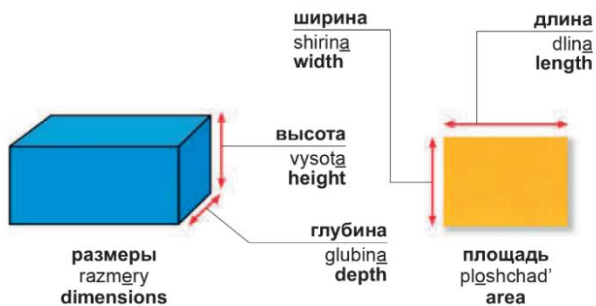
дробь
drob'
fraction



циркуль
tsirkul'
compass



калькулятор
kal'kulyator
calculator



принадлежности prinadlezhnosti • equipment



угольник
ugol'nik
triangle



транспортир
transportir
protractor



линейка
lineyka
ruler

Basic conversation and short stories

Greeting	Russian	(Phonetics)
Hello (formal)	Здравствуй <u>те</u>	(ZDRAST-uy-te)
Hello (familiar)	Здравствуй	(ZDRAST-uy)
Hi	Привет	(pri-VYET)
Good Day	Добры <u>й</u> день	(DO-briy DYEN)
Good Morning	Добро <u>е</u> утро	(DO-bra-ye OO-tra)
Good Evening	Добры <u>й</u> вечер	(DO-briy VYE-chir)
Good Night	Доброй н <u>очи</u>	(DO-broy NO-chi)
Sleep Well	Спокойной н <u>очи</u>	(spa-KOY-noy NO-chi)
Sweet Dreams	Сладких снов	(SLAD-kkh SNOF)
Goodbye	До свидания	(da svi-DA-ni-ya)
Farewell	Прощай	(pra-SCHAIY)
Bye	Пока	(pa-KA)
See You Soon	До скоро <u>го</u>	(da SKO-ra-va)
See You Then	До вст <u>речи</u>	(da VSTRYE-chi)
Happy Birthday!	С Днём Рожд <u>ения</u> !	(s DNYOM razh-DYE-ni-ya)
Merry Christmas!	С Рожд <u>еством</u>	(s razh-DYE-stvam)
	Христ <u>овым</u> !	(hri-STO-viym)
Happy New Year!	С Новым Год <u>ом</u> !	(s NO-vim GO-dam)

Some short expressions:

My name is Masha. Меня зовут Маша.

The Russian Language. Русский язык.

Russian winter. Русская зима.

Russian Women. Русские женщины.

Russian Men. Русские мужчины.
Yuri Gagarin. Юрий Гагарин.
Remnants of socialism in Russia.
Остатки социализма в России
Russian Food. Русская еда
going to the seaside. Отправляясь на море
Moscow. Москва
Sport in Russia. Спорт в России
The Trans-Siberian Railway.
Транссибирская магистраль.
Relationships in Russia.
Взаимоотношения в России.
Russian History. Российская история
Globalization. Глобализация
Russian Military. Русская армия
Saint Petersburg. Санкт-Петербург
Russian Weddings. Русская свадьба
taking a train in Russia.
**Отправляясь путешествовать на поезде в
россии.**

**В тихом омуте черти водятся.
V tihom omute cherti vodyatsa.**

"Still waters run deep"

Привет, я Катя.

Privet, ya Katya. .

Hi I'm Katya.

Здравствуйте, меня зовут Катя.

Zdrastvuyte, menya zavut Katya

Hello, my name is Katya.

Приятно с Вами познакомиться.

Priyatna s vami paznakomitsa.

Nice to meet you.

Очень приятно.

Ochen' priyatna.

Pleased to meet you.

Здравствуйте, Вы - Павел Иванович?

Zdravstvuyte, Vy - Pavel Ivanovich?

Hello, are you Pavel Ivanovich?

Здравствуйте, могу я поговорить с Анной?

Zdrastvuyte, magu ya pagavarit's Annay ?

Hello, can I speak to Anna?

Здравствуйте, давно не виделись!

Zdrastvuyte, davno ne videlis'!

Hello, long time no see!

Здравствуйте, Вы откуда?

Zdrastvuyte, Vy atkuda?

Hello, where are you from?

Здравствуйте, Вы - Павел Иванович?

Zdrastvuyte, Vy - Pavel Ivanavich?

Hello, are you Pavel Ivanovich?

Меня зовут Александр.

Menya zovut Alexandr.

My name is Alexandr.

Желаю приятного полёта!

Zhelayu priyatnava palyota!

Wish you a nice flight!

Очень приятно познакомиться!

Ochen' priyatna paznakomitsa!

Very nice to meet you (get to know you)!

Как приятно!

Kak priyatna!

How nice!"/"What a pleasure!

Приятно слышать.

Priyatna slyshat'.

Nice to hear.

Приятно познакомиться.

Priyatna raznakomitsa.

Nice to meet you.

Ты пойдёшь со мной в кино?

Ty paydyosh' sa mnoy f kino?

Will you go to the movies with me?

Какой сегодня день?

Kakoy sevodnya den'?

What day is it today?

В течение дня я работаю в аптеке.

F techeniye dnya ya rabotayu v apteke.

During the day, I work at a pharmacy.

Я убираю в своей комнате каждый день.

Ya ubirayu f svayey komnate kazhdyy den'.

I clean my room every day.

Он весь день сидит дома.

On ves' den' sidit doma.

He's been sitting at home all day.

Какой странный день!

Kakoy strannyy den'!

What a strange day!

До моего дня рождения осталось 3 дня.

Da moyevo dnya razhdeniya astalas' 3 dnya.

Three days left till my birthday.

Здравствуйте, Вы - Павел Иванович?

Zdravstvuyte, Vy - Pavel Ivanovich?

Hello, are you Pavel Ivanovich?

Здравствуйте, могу я поговорить с Анной?

Zdrastvuyte, mogu ya pogavarit' s Annay?

Hello, can I speak to Anna?

Здравствуйте, давно не виделись!

Zdrastvuyte, davno ne videlis'!

Hello, long time no see!

Здравствуйте, Вы откуда?

Zdrastvuyte, Vy atkuda?

Hello, where are you from?

Здравствуйте, Вы - Павел Иванович?

Zdrastvuyte, Vy - Pavel Ivanovich?

Hello, are you Pavel Ivanovich?

Большое спасибо за поддержку.

Bol'shoye spasibo za poddyerzhku.

Thank you very much for your support.

Спасибо за приглашение.

Spasiba za priglasheniye.

Thanks for the invitation.

Ты пойдёшь со мной в кино?

Ty poydyosh' sa mnoy f kino?

Will you go to the movies with me?

Это всё.

Eto vsyo.

That's all.

Всё будет хорошо.

Vsyo budyet horosho.

Everything will be okay.

Как у тебя дела?

Kak u tebya dela?

How are you?

Я - хорошо.

Ya - khorosho.

I'm fine.

Извини. Извините. Это моя вина! Простите.

Izvini. Izvinite. Eta maya vina. Prastite.

Excuse me. Excuse me. My bad! I'm sorry.

ХОРОШО FINE
ДА, КОНЕЧНО YES, SURE
СОВЕРШЕННО ВЕРНО ABSOLUTELY
КАК ЭТО ВЕРНО THAT'S SO TRUE
ТОЧНО EXACTLY
ДОГОВОРИЛИСЬ IT'S A DEAL
АГА YEP
НЕТ ПРОБЛЕМ NO PROBLEM
ТАК ДАЖЕ ЛУЧШЕ THAT'S EVEN BETTER

ВЕСЁЛЫЙ CHEERFUL
НЕЛЕПЫЙ SILLY
СМЕШНОЙ LAUGHABLE
ЗАБАВНЫЙ FUNNY
КОМИЧНЫЙ COMICAL
ШУТЛИВЫЙ PLAYFUL
ПРИКОЛЬНЫЙ COOL
ЗАНИМАТЕЛЬНЫЙ AMUSING
ЮМОРИСТИЧЕСКИЙ HUMOROUS

Вólка нóги кóрмят.
Volka nogi kormyat.
A wolf's legs feed him.
(Effort is necessary.)



Как мы встретились

How We Met

Серж и его жена Лена вместе уже много лет. Эта история о том, как они встретились. Сержу было девятнадцать. Он учился в Париже. Лена была студенткой по обмену из России. Вскоре Серж и Лена начали встречаться. Но Лена должна была уехать из Франции.

Serge and his wife Lena have been together for many years already. This story is about how they met each other. Serg was nineteen. He was studying in Paris. Lena was an exchange student from Russia. Soon Serge and Lena began to date. But Lena had to leave France.

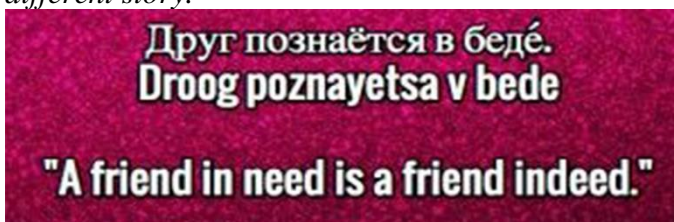
Они обменялись адресами. Серж обещал писать ей. Через несколько месяцев он заставил себя забыть Лену. Он не был готов уехать в Россию. Он знал, что Лена не сможет приехать во Францию.

They exchanged their addresses. Serge promised to write to her. In a few months, he made himself forget about Lena. He wasn't ready to go to Russia. He knew she wouldn't be able to go to France.

Через три года он понял, что Лена лучшая девушка. Он написал ей. Письмо пришло

обратно. Лена сменила адрес. Через пять лет он встретил её на свидании вслепую. Серж заставил Лену простить его, но это уже другая история.

In three years, he understood that Lena is the best girl. He wrote to her. The letter came back. She'd changed the address. In five years, he met her on a blind date. He made her forgive him, but it's a different story.



Идеальный писатель

A Perfect Writer

Игорь любит читать книги. Он любил читать в школе и писал хорошие сочинения. Время прошло, но он всё равно любит читать. Он обсуждает книги со своей подругой Светой. Но он всегда ищет минусы. Так сказала Света. Она попросила его написать идеальный рассказ. Без минусов. Игорь согласился. Он был уверен, что всё будет хорошо. Но это было трудно. Ничего не

вышло. Он встретился со Светой и рассказал историю. История была о нём и о Свете. Он благодарен Свете. Она дала ему хороший урок: писателем быть трудно.

Igor enjoys reading books. He liked reading at school and wrote great essays. The time has passed, but he still likes reading. He discusses books with his friend Sveta. But he's always looking for disadvantages. Sveta said so. She asked him to write a perfect story. Without disadvantages. Igor agreed. He was sure everything would be ok. But that was hard to do. It didn't work out. He met Sveta and told a story. That was a story about him and Sveta. He's grateful to Sveta. She taught him a good lesson — it's hard to be a writer.

Спасатели

Rescuers

Виктор – врач. Около двадцати пяти лет назад он вылечил маленького мальчика. Все его коллеги сказали, что ребёнка спасти невозможно. Но Виктор не мог смотреть, как он умирает. Ему удалось спасти малыша.

Victor is a doctor. About twenty five years ago, he cured a little boy. All his colleagues said it was impossible to save him. But Victor couldn't watch him die. He managed to save the baby.

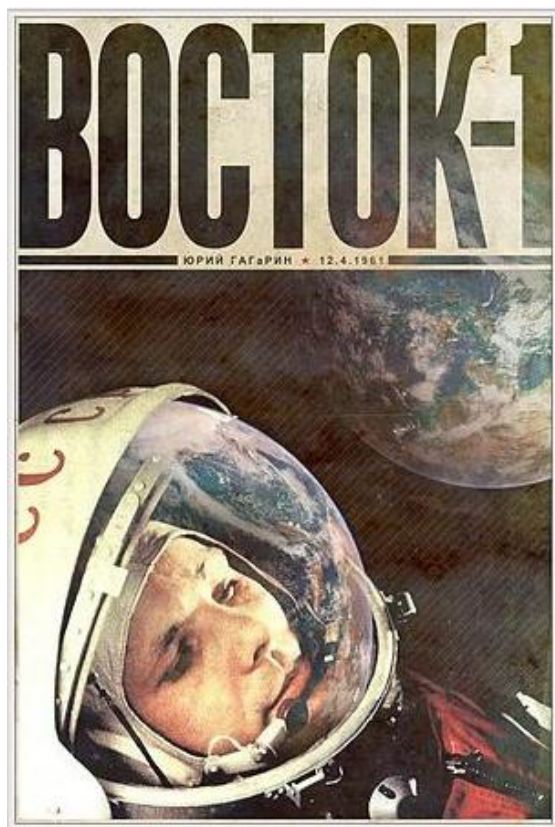
Несколько месяцев назад Виктор попал в автокатастрофу. Он не мог открыть дверь. Виктор вызвал спасателей. Они прибыли довольно быстро. Машина была вся в огне. Но никто не хотел рисковать своей жизнью. Только один из спасателей оказался достаточно храбрым, чтобы спасти Виктора.

A few months ago, Victor got in a car crash. He couldn't open the door. Victor called the rescue team. They arrived quite quickly. The whole car was on fire. But nobody wanted to risk their lives. Only one of them turned out to be brave enough to save Viktor.

Вскоре Виктор поправился, узнал адрес спасателя и навестил его. Оказалось, что его спас мальчик, которого Виктор вылечил двадцать пять лет назад.

Viktor recovered soon and found out the rescuer's address and visited him. It turned out Victor was saved by the boy he had cured twenty five years ago.

Юрий Гагарин Yuri Gagarin



Во времена Советского Союза исследование космоса было одной из важнейших задач. И именно из СССР была отправлена ракета, совершившая первый полет в космос. Произошло это 12 апреля 1961 года. Этот день стал важной частью истории. Космонавтом на борту был летчик Юрий Алексеевич Гагарин. Давайте узнаем кое-что о жизни этой поистине героической личности.

During the times of the Soviet Union, space exploration was one of the main priorities. And a rocket undertaking the first flight into space departed from the USSR. That happened on the 12th of April, 1961. This day became an important part of history. The cosmonaut on board was pilot Yuri Alekseevich Gagarin. Let's find out something about the life of this truly heroic person.

Юрий Гагарин родился 9 марта 1934 года в селе Клушино в Смоленской области. Он был выходцем из простой крестьянской семьи. Позднее он заканчивает Люберецкое училище в Москве, затем Саратовский техникум. Кстати

именно в Саратове он проходит обучение в аэроклубе.

Yuri Gagarin was born on the 9th of March in 1934 in Clushino village, Smolensk area. He was a native from simple country family. Later he finished Lubertsy School in Moscow, then Saratov Technikum School. By the way, in Saratov he studied in the aero club.

Он женился на Валентине Горячевой. Вскоре у него появилось двое замечательных дочерей – Лена и Галя. Каким же человеком был Юрий Гагарин в жизни? Ответ на этот вопрос получить действительно сложно. В какой-то степени это связано с поддержанием Советскими властями типичного образа героя, который должен был стать примером для молодого поколения. И он им действительно стал. Почти каждый школьник на вопрос о том, кем он мечтает стать, когда вырастет, с уверенностью отвечал – космонавтом.

He married Valentina Goriacheva. Soon he had two wonderful daughters, Lena and Galia. So what kind of person was Gagarin? It's really hard to find the answer to this question. This is in some ways connected with attempts of the Soviet authorities to keep the typical image of a hero which must be an example for young generation. And he really became it. Practically every schoolboy when asked the question about the job of dreams, answered that he'd like to be a cosmonaut.

Бесспорно, главным событием в жизни Юрия Гагарина стал его полет в космос, который он совершил на корабле «Восток». Этот полет длился 108 минут. За это время ракета облетела вокруг Земли один оборот и затем вернулась на орбиту.

No doubt that the main event in the life of Yuri Gagarin became his flight into space (cosmos) which he made on the craft "West". This flight lasted 108 minutes. The rocket flew around the Earth and then came back to the orbit.

108 минут теперь кажется небольшим временем, проведенным в космосе. Но только задумайтесь, что это значило для человека, который осознавал, что он делает это первым во всем мире. Бесспорно, полет был связан с огромным риском. И Юрий Гагарин это прекрасно понимал.

108 minutes now seems not a long time spent in space. But just think what that meant for a person who knew that he was the first one to do it. No doubt the flight was connected with tremendous risk. And Yuri Gagarin understood that clearly.

Свидетельством этому является его прощальное письмо, которое он написал своей жене. В нем Гагарин просит ее не переживать сильно, если он погибнет во время этого полета. Также космонавт говорит там о своих детях, о том, что он их очень любит и надеется, что они получат хорошее воспитание. Но Гагарин так и не передал это письмо жене. Вместо этого космонавт спрятал его дома. Валентина Горячева обнаружила это письмо уже через некоторое время после смерти своего мужа. Почему он не передал ей письмо сразу? Возможно, он не хотел напугать ее.

The testimony on it is his farewell letter which he has written to his wife. Gagarin asks her not to experience much if he perishes during the flight. Also the cosmonaut speaks there about his children, that he loves them very much and hopes that they will get good education. But Gagarin hadn't given the letter to the wife. Instead of that, the cosmonaut hid it at home. Valentina Goriacheva found it after the death of her husband. So why hadn't he given her a letter at once? Maybe he didn't want to scare her.

Перед полетом Юрию Гагарину дали конверт, в котором был секретный шифр, цифра «25», как выяснилось позднее. Этот шифр позволял перейти с запланированного автоматического на ручное управление космическим кораблем в случае неполадок. Почему шифр не сообщили космонавту сразу? Дело в том, что психологи доказывали, что человек, увидевший свою планету со стороны, скорее всего, сойдет с ума. Поэтому шифр сразу не сообщили, чтобы космонавт не начал управление кораблем в безрассудном состоянии.

Before the flight Yuri Gagarin was given an envelope where the secret cipher was – the figure “25”, as it was found out later. This cipher allowed going from planned automatic to manual operation of the spacecraft in case of malfunctions. Why wasn't the message cipher given to the cosmonaut in advance? The reason is that psychologists proved that a person having seen his planet from the space is more likely to go mad. That is why the cipher wasn't messaged at once so that the cosmonaut wouldn't start running the craft in madness.

Уже до полета информационное агентство подготовило три варианта сообщений, докладывающих о том, как он проходит. В первом говорилось, что все прошло успешно. Во втором сообщалось, что корабль не смог покинуть орбиту и произошло его крушение на Земле. В этом варианте звучало обращение к правительствам других государств с просьбой помочь в обнаружении космонавта. В третьем же сообщении объявлялось, что первый космонавт трагически погиб.

Before the flight informational agency had prepared 3 variants of messages reporting how it goes. In the first one it was told that all went successfully. The second one reported that the craft couldn't leave the orbit and its wreck took place on the Earth. This variant also addressed to governments of other countries and asked for help in searching of the cosmonaut. And the third one declared that the first cosmonaut tragically perished.

К счастью, полет прошел успешно. Юрий Гагарин стал первым человеком, побывавшим в космосе. Сразу после приземления космонавта отвезли на встречу с Никитой Хрущевым. Уже на следующий день Юрий Гагарин стоял перед Красной Площадью с самыми высокопоставленными жителями столицы. Здесь он приветствовал огромную толпу людей, которые пришли с плакатами и фотографиями космонавта. Еще сам не понимая этого, он уже стал национальным героем. Когда космонавт встретился со своей женой, то сказал, что не ожидал, что все получится именно так. Он думал, что выполнит поставленное задание, вернется, и его обычная жизнь будет продолжаться.

Fortunately the flight went successfully. Yury Gagarin became the first person in space. Right after landing the cosmonaut was driven to the meeting with Nikita Khrushchev. And the next day Yuri Gagarin was standing in front of the Red Square with the most high-ranking capital inhabitants. Here he was greeting a crowd of people who came with posters and pictures of the cosmonaut. Still not understanding that he had already become a national hero. When the cosmonaut met his wife he said that he hadn't expected it to be that way. He had thought that he would do the task, come back and his usual life would continue.

Но все оказалось совсем иначе. После полета в космос Юрий Гагарин стал человеком, представляющим СССР. Ему присвоили звание Героя Советского Союза. Также его сразу же повысили от лейтенанта до майора. Вскоре о его славе узнали и за рубежом. Награды просто посыпались на космонавта. Он стал Героем Труда Болгарии, Чехии, Вьетнама. Многие города признали его своим почетным гражданином. Среди них Смоленск, Саратов, Севастополь, София, Пловдив, Афины, Лимасол, Сен-Дени.

Обо всех орденах, значках и медалях даже сложно вспомнить.

But all appeared absolutely different. After the flight into space, Yuri Gagarin became a person representing the USSR. He was given the rank of Soviet Union hero. Also from a lieutenant he was at once raised to a major. Soon they found out about his glory abroad. The awards just fell down on the cosmonaut. He had become a Work Hero of Bulgaria, Czechia, Vietnam. Many cities recognized him their honorable citizen. Smolensk, Saratov, Sevastopol, Sophia, Plovdiv, Athens, Limasol, Saint-Denis are among them. And it's hard to remember all the orders, signs and medals.

Все мечтали пожать ему руку, поговорить с героем. Его улыбка стала одним из символов Советского Союза. До полетов в космос его больше не допускали. Говорили, что он уже выполнил свой долг перед Родиной. Зато Юрия Гагарина направляли на торжественные встречи по всему миру.

Everyone dreamed to shake his hand, to speak with a hero. His smile had become one of the symbols of Soviet Union. He wasn't allowed to go on space flights anymore. They said that he had already carried out his duty to the Native land. Though Yuri Gagarin was directed to solemn meetings all over the world.

К несчастью в 1968 году Юрий Гагарин трагически погибает во время тренировочного полета на истребителе. Произошла авария двигателя. Хотя многие обстоятельства аварии выглядят достаточно загадочно. Есть даже версии, что когда самолет начал падение, пилоты уже не были живы. Или что официальное место крушения находится на расстоянии тридцати километров от реального. Что ж насколько правдивы эти версии, мы вряд ли когда-нибудь узнаем. Похоронили Юрия Гагарина у Кремлевской стены на Красной Площади.

Unfortunately, in 1968, Yuri Gagarin tragically dies during a training flight in a fighter jet. An accident with the engine took place. Though lots circumstances of the accident look quiet mysterious. There are even versions that when a plane started

falling the pilots weren't alive already. Or that the official place of the crash is situated on 30 kilometers from the real one. But we'll hardly ever know how truthful these versions are. Yuri Gagarin was buried near the Kremlin wall on the Red Square.

Сегодня город Гжатск, в котором много лет жил первый космонавт, переименован в Гагарин. Также его имя носит кратер на обратной стороне Луны и астероид №1772. Многие улицы, площади, проспекты были названы в его честь. А 12 апреля, день, когда человек впервые полетел в космос, считается праздником. Это День Космонавтики.

Today the Gjatsk city where the first cosmonaut spent many years has been renamed to Gagarin. Also the crater on a backward side of the Moon and the asteroid №1772 carries his name. Lots of streets, squares and prospects were named after him. And the 12th of April – the day when the first man flew to space - is a holiday. This is the day of Cosmonautics.

REFERENCES

- Louis Pascal and Anne McKenzie. French language for beginners.
- M. Charlotte Wolf - 1001 Easy German Phrases-Dover Publications (2011).
- Ed Swick, Easy German STEP-BY-STEP. Copyright © 2015 by McGraw-Hill Education. ISBN: 978-0-07-184047-7.
- Anthony Metivier, PhD. How to Learn and Memorize German Vocabulary. www.memorizegermanvocabulary.com
- Visual German-english Dictionary. Copyright © 2015 Dorling Kindersley Limited. A Penguin Random House Company. ISBN: 978-1-4654-3631-
- 3.
- A complete guide to german for buiginers..© Copyright 2018 by Dave Smith - All rights reserved
- Alex Maxwell, Learn german fast.
- Richard Newnham. Deutsche Kurzgeschichten (1). Copyright © Penguin Books Ltd, 1964 ISBN: 978-0-14-195942-9
- Брагина, Н.В. УРА! – Уроки Русского Англоговорящим. Russian for Speakers of English / Н.В. Брагина – М.:Прондо, 2014. – 134 с. ISBN 978-5-905463-61-
- 7
- Russian Short Stories for Beginners. Copyright © 2019 by Lingo Mastery
- Easy Russian Phrase Book. Copyright © 2019 by Lingo Mastery GETAWAY GUIDES Russian for Beginners.
- NICHOLAS J. BROWN THE NEW PENGUIN RUSSIAN

COURSE.1996. ISBN-13: 978--0-140-12041-7
Visual Russian-english Dictionary. Copyright © 2016 Dorling
Kindersley Limited. A Penguin Random House Company.
ISBN: 978-1-4654-4415-8

Terence Wade. A Comprehensive Russian Grammar. © 2020
Terence Wade & John Wiley & Sons Ltd. ISBN
9781119520320 (adobe pdf)
<https://www.Germanveryeasy.com>
<https://www.easy-deutsch.de>
<http://learn-french-free-with-stories.weebly.com/>
<https://www.masteryourfrench.com>
<https://mariebarreno.wordpress.com>
<https://www.fluentu.com/>
<https://www.RussianPod101.com>
<https://www.Russianlessonsnet.com>
[https://www.Easy Russian Blog.com](https://www.EasyRussianBlog.com)
[https://www. Must-know.com](https://www.Must-know.com)
Cambridgeshire Race Equality & Diversity Service
<https://www.LingoMastery.com>
<https://www.thoughtco.com>
<https://www.wordpress.com>

